

CAMBRIDGE

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
www.irLanguage.com

# English Vocabulary in Use

Intermediate

Vocabulary reference  
and practice

With answers

B1

English  
Profile



CD-ROM



Third Edition

Stuart Redman

# English Vocabulary **in** **Use**

Intermediate

**THIRD  
EDITION**

*with answers  
and CD-ROM*

**Stuart Redman**



# Contents

## Communication and technology

- 51** Newspapers and television 108
- 52** Phoning and texting 110
- 53** Computers 112
- 54** Email and the Internet 114

## Social issues

- 55** Crime 116
- 56** Politics 118
- 57** Climate change 120
- 58** War and violence 122

## Concepts

- 59** Time 124
- 60** Numbers 126
- 61** Distance, dimensions and size 128
- 62** Objects, materials, shapes and colour 130
- 63** Containers and quantities 132

## Functional language

- 64** Apologies, excuses and thanks 134
- 65** Requests, permission and suggestions 136
- 66** Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing 138
- Likes, dislikes, attitudes and preferences 140
- Greetings, farewells and special expressions 142

## Word formation

- 69** Prefixes: changing meaning 144
- 70** Suffixes: forming nouns 146
- 71** Suffixes: forming adjectives 148
- 72** Nouns and verbs with the same form 150
- 73** Compound nouns 152

## Phrase building

- 74** Word partners 154
- 75** Fixed phrases 156

- 76** Fixed phrases in conversation 158
- 77** Verb or adjective + preposition 160
- 78** Prepositional phrases 162
- 79** Phrasal verbs 1: form and meaning 164
- Phrasal verbs 2: grammar and style 166

## Key verbs

- 81** *Make, do and take:* uses and phrases 168
- 82** Key verbs: *give, keep and miss* 170
- 83** *Get:* uses, phrases and phrasal verbs 172
- 84** *Go:* meanings and expressions 174
- 85** The senses 176

## Words and grammar

- 86** Uncountable nouns 178
- 87** Verb constructions 1 180
- 88** Verb constructions 2 182
- 89** Adjectives 184
- 90** Prepositions: place and movement 186
- 91** Adverbs 188

## Connecting and linking

- 92** Time and sequence 190
- 93** Addition and contrast 192
- 94** Reason, purpose, result, condition 194

## Style and register

- 95** Formal and informal English 196
- 96** Completing forms and CVs 198
- 97** Writing an essay 200
- 98** Formal letters 202
- 99** Informal emails and letters 204
- 100** Abbreviations 206

- Answer key** 208

- Phonemic symbols** 247

- Index** 248

- How to use the CD-ROM** 263



# Thanks and acknowledgements

For this third edition, I would particularly like to thank Julie Moore for her detailed and insightful comments on the manuscript while in preparation. At Cambridge University Press, I would like to thank the editorial team under Noirin Burke, and especially Tracy Griffin for her tireless work in editing a long and complex manuscript, Alyson Maskell for her editorial work and support, and Emily Hird for her overall supervision of the project and for carefully steering the book from its early stages through to production. Finally, I would like to thank Andy George and Jeanette Alfoldi in production, Lucy Fox for photo research, and Marcus Fletcher for proofreading.

I would also like to thank the teachers and students who participated in focus groups at the following institutions:

Anglia Ruskin University, Cambridge  
Cambridge Academy of English, Cambridge  
OISE, Cambridge  
Oxford English Centre, Oxford

This product is informed by English Profile. English Profile is a collaborative program to enhance the learning, teaching and assessment of English worldwide and its main funding partners are Cambridge University Press and Cambridge ESOL. The aim of English Profile is to create a 'profile' for English linked to the Common European Framework of Reference for Languages (CEF). English Profile outcomes will provide detailed information about the language that learners can be expected to demonstrate at each CEF level, offering a clear benchmark for learners' proficiency. For more information, please visit [www.englishprofile.org](http://www.englishprofile.org).

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)



# Introduction

## To the student

This book will help you learn more than 2,000 words and phrases, and you can use it without a teacher. There are 100 units in the book. You can study them in any order, but the first four units have information about vocabulary that will help you with your learning.

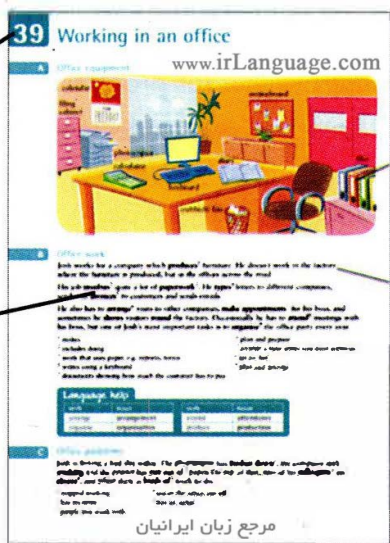
Here is what the pages look

The left-hand page presents the new vocabulary.

New vocabulary is in bold.

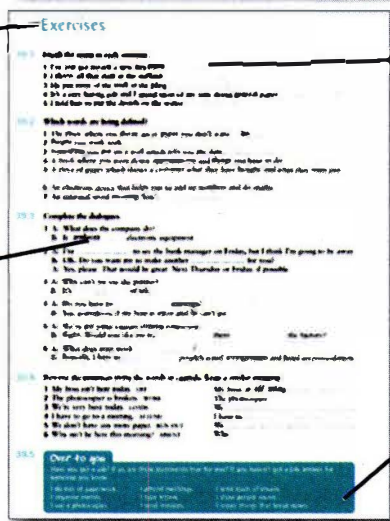
The right-hand page practises the new vocabulary.

There is an example in each exercise to help you.



Pictures and diagrams show the meaning of some words.

Example sentences help you to understand new words.



There is space for you to write your answers.

Over to you is a chance for you to use the new words to write about yourself, your life and your country.

After you do the exercises, you can check your answers in the **Answer key** at the back of the book. You will also find possible answers for most of the **Over to you** exercises.

The **Index** at the back of the book has all the new words and phrases from the units, with a phonemic transcription to help you with pronunciation. If you have the edition with the CD-ROM, you can listen to the pronunciation of all the new vocabulary, and there are more practice exercises as well. See pp 263–4 for more information about the CD-ROM.

There is another book that gives you further practice of all the vocabulary in this book. It is called *Test your English Vocabulary in Use Intermediate*.

After you finish this book, you can go on to study *English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate*, and then *English Vocabulary in Use Advanced*.

It is a good idea to have a dictionary when you use the book. Sometimes you may want a bilingual dictionary, so you can find a translation; sometimes the book asks you to use an English dictionary for an exercise. You also need a notebook when you are studying. The study units 1–4 in this book will give you ideas and information to help you to use your notebook and become a better learner. I hope you enjoy using this book.

## To the teacher

This book can be used in class or for self-study. It is intended for learners at the upper A2 level and B1 level on the Council of Europe scale, and teaches more than 2,000 words and phrases. The vocabulary is organised around common everyday topics, but also contains units on different aspects of language such as phrasal verbs, uncountable nouns and link words and phrases. These units provide key information about lexis, but also help to ensure that learners are exposed to the most important vocabulary for their level. The first four units are dedicated to aspects of vocabulary learning such as record keeping and dictionary use. The book has been written so that units can be studied in any order, but I recommend you look at these four study units first, as they provide learners with important advice about vocabulary learning in general.

Throughout the book, vocabulary items have been chosen for their usefulness in a wide range of everyday situations, and this task has been made easier by having access to the English Profile (EP). Forming part of a large research programme sponsored by the Council of Europe, the EP helps teachers and students identify the words or phrases that a learner can be expected to know at each level of the Common European Framework. The words and phrases have been selected using the Cambridge Learner Corpus, examination wordlists and classroom materials, and in this book the main focus is on words and phrases at the upper end of the A2 level and across the B1 level.

Much of the new vocabulary (on average about 25 items per unit) is presented through different types of text, and then explained immediately after the item appears, or in a separate glossary below the text; some words are presented in tables or lists, and contextualised in sentence examples; some of the new vocabulary is presented in pictures and diagrams.

The new vocabulary is then practised on the right-hand pages through a wide range of exercise types. These pages generally progress from easier to more difficult exercises, with items often tested receptively first, e.g. through a matching or grouping exercise, before moving on to more challenging productive exercises such as gap-fill texts or sentence transformations. In many units, the final exercise is called **Over to you**. This indicates a personalised exercise, in which learners have an opportunity to use some of the new vocabulary to talk about themselves, their lives and their country, and sometimes to express their own personal opinions. These make ideal classroom speaking activities for pairs or groups, but many of the exercises on the right-hand page can be adapted for speaking practice. For example, where there are short question and answer dialogues, students can first read the dialogues out loud, then one student can ask the questions, and their partner has to respond appropriately using target vocabulary from the unit, but without referring to the book.

There is a comprehensive Answer key at the back of the book, as well as an Index of all the vocabulary taught with a phonemic pronunciation guide and a unit reference to where each item appears.

Alongside this book, you can also use *Test Your Vocabulary in Use Intermediate*. This accompanying book provides tests on all the vocabulary from *English Vocabulary in Use Intermediate*, and is an ideal way for you to revise the vocabulary with your students. After that, they will be ready to go on to *English Vocabulary in Use Upper-intermediate* by Michael McCarthy and Felicity O'Dell.

Find more resources for teachers at [www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

I hope you enjoy using this new edition.



# 51

## Newspapers and television

### A Newspapers

Most papers [newspapers] are **daily**, which means that they come out [appear in shops; *syn* are published] every day. Some are **national** [for the whole country], others are **regional** [for a part of the country]. Some newspapers are published online; these are called **e-papers**. You can also get **mobile editions** [you read a newspaper on your phone]. Magazines are usually weekly or monthly.



### B Contents of\* newspapers

**Reports** [pieces of writing about news items, written by reporters/journalists, e.g. a report in *The Times* on/about a crime]

**Articles** [pieces of writing about an important subject, e.g. an article on/about drugs]

**Headlines** [titles written in large letters above reports/articles, e.g. GOVERNMENT LOSES VOTE]

**Reviews** [pieces of writing giving an opinion, e.g. a review of a new book]

**Advertisements or adverts** [words and pictures about a product, to make people buy it, e.g. an advert for shampoo]

\*information in

### C Television

If you **broadcast** something, you send it out on TV, radio or the Internet. There are now many broadcasting companies and many programmes. People watch:

- the news [information about world events]
- the weather forecast [a description of what the weather will be like in the next few days]
- documentaries [programmes that give facts about real situations and real people]
- chat shows [programmes where famous people are asked questions about themselves]
- a series [a number of programmes that have the same characters or deal with the same subject]
- soap operas [a regular series of programmes, often two or three times a week, about a group of characters who live in the same area]
- reality TV shows [programmes which follow ordinary people or celebrities [famous people] through a number of situations or challenges. Well-known [famous] examples include: *Pop Idol*, *The X Factor* and *Strictly Come Dancing*].

#### Language help

We usually use **channel** to talk about television broadcasting, e.g. *The news is on Channel 4*; and **station** to talk about radio broadcasting, e.g. *A: What station are you listening to? B: Radio 1 – it's mostly pop music.*

### D Media reporting\*

Many newspapers also have online forums where people can leave messages and discuss topics. News is also reported online through podcasts [a radio programme that you download from the Internet and play on your computer or MP3 player], e.g. Have you heard the latest business podcast on the CNN website?

When we refer to something that someone has said or written, we do it in these ways:

It said in *The Times* that the plane crashed in the sea.

According to the news on TV last night, the plane crashed in the sea.

\*reporting in newspapers, on TV or the Internet

#### Common mistakes

It says in the paper / According to the paper ... (NOT It's written in the paper ...)

# Exercises

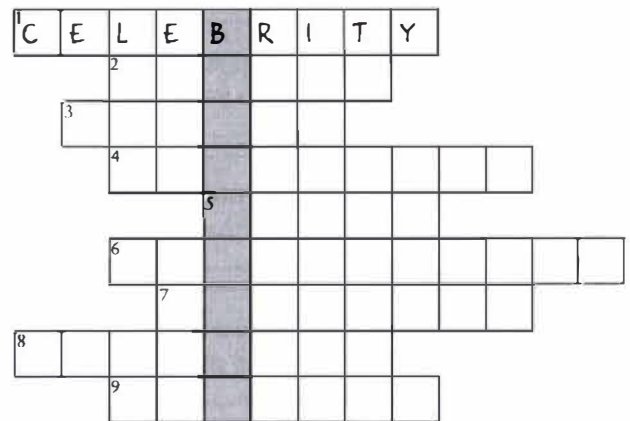
- 51.1** Tick (✓) the words which describe a type of TV programme.  
 the news ✓      documentary      headline      soap opera  
 chat show      review      article      series

**51.2** Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Have you heard of 'Radio Five Live'?  
 B: Yes, it's a very popular *station*.
- 2 A: Is the magazine published every day?  
 B: No, it ..... monthly.
- 3 A: Is it a national paper?  
 B: No, it's a ..... paper for the south-west.
- 4 A: Can we watch the news now?  
 B: Yes, it's on ..... Four.
- 5 A: Are they mostly famous people?  
 B: Yes, they're all .....

**51.3** Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

- 1 a famous person
- 2 a number of programmes with the same characters
- 3 a piece of writing about a news item
- 4 programmes several times a week about the same people
- 5 happening every day
- 6 a factual programme about real people and situations
- 7 relating to the whole country
- 8 a programme that interviews famous people
- 9 a piece of writing about an important subject



**51.4** Complete the sentences.

- 1 Did you read that *article* ..... in the paper yesterday about space?
- 2 The manager was interviewed for the paper by one of their well-known .....
- 3 Do you understand this ..... ? '200 WOMEN GIVEN WRONG DIAGNOSIS'
- 4 Rock FM is the name of a radio .....
- 5 It ..... in the paper that the interest rate is likely to go up soon.
- 6 I read a ..... of his latest film. It doesn't sound very good.
- 7 You often see ..... in the paper which promise that you can learn a language in ten hours with this method. It isn't true.
- 8 ..... to the weather ..... last night, it's going to rain today.
- 9 I never watch ..... operas.
- 10 I love *The X Factor*; in fact, I love all ..... TV shows!

**51.5**

**Over to you**

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 How many daily national newspapers are there?
- 2 How many newspapers only come out on Sunday in your country?
- 3 What parts of the newspaper do you read?
- 4 What types of TV programme do you watch?

# Phoning and texting

## A Starting a phone conversation

The call on the left is between two friends: Joe and Rosie. When British people answer the phone at home, they usually just say 'hello'. The call on the right is a more formal business call.

JOE: Hello?  
 ROSIE: Is that Joe?  
 JOE: Yeah.  
 ROSIE: Hi. It's Rosie.

RECEPTIONIST: Good morning. Chalfont Electronics.  
 PAUL SHARP: Oh, could I speak to Jane Gordon, please?  
 RECEPTIONIST: Yes. Who's calling, please?  
 PAUL SHARP: My name is Paul Sharp from Bexel Plastics.  
 RECEPTIONIST: Right, Mr Sharp. I'm putting you through [I'm connecting you] ... (pause) ...  
 JANE GORDON: Hello?  
 PAUL SHARP: Mrs Gordon?  
 JANE GORDON: Speaking. [Yes, this is Mrs Gordon.]

### Common mistakes

We say: **Is that Joe?** (NOT ~~Are you Joe?~~ or ~~Is it Joe?~~)

And we say: **It's Rosie.** (NOT ~~I am Rosie~~ or ~~Here is Rosie.~~)

## B Problems on the phone

I tried to ring you this morning [phone you] but I think you were on the phone to your mother [using the phone].

I gave her a ring this morning [phoned her], but I couldn't get through [make contact / speak to her]; the line was engaged [being used, someone was on the phone].

I think I dialled [made a phone call to a particular number] the wrong number (e.g. 451 and not 351) this morning – I got a very angry person on the phone!

I left a message (e.g. Please ring me) on Dan's answerphone as he was out [not there; *syn* not in], but he never phoned me back [returned my phone call], so I don't know if he got my message.

## C Phone numbers

Q: What's your home phone number? (also landline) A: 603 884  
 Q: What's your mobile number? A: 07723 259369  
 Q: What's the emergency number for the police, fire or ambulance? A: 999  
 Q: What's the dialling code for the UK when you are phoning from Hungary? A: 0044

## D Mobile phones and texting

Many people use their mobile mostly/mainly [most of the time] for texting [sending short written messages from one phone to another]. Do you text your friends and family all the time?

These are common text abbreviations [letters which represent words].

ASAP = as soon as possible	CUL8R = see you later
BF = boyfriend (GF = girlfriend)	IMO = in my opinion [this is what I think]
B4 = before	OIC = Oh, I see [I understand]
2DAY = today	B4N = bye for now [goodbye for now]
2MORO = tomorrow	FYI = for your information
Y = why	U = you
PLS = please	THX = thanks
X = kiss	LOL = laughing out loud



# Exercises

## 52.1 Answer the questions.

1 What are two more ways of saying *I called him*?

I phoned him.

2 You phoned Tom but weren't able to speak to him. What are three possible reasons for this?

.....  
.....  
.....

3 You can ring a phone number. What are three other numbers you can ring?

..... number ..... number ..... number

## 52.2 Complete the phone conversations.

A: Hello?

B: Good morning. Could I <sup>1</sup> speak to ..... Colin James?

A: Who's <sup>2</sup> ....., please?

B: <sup>3</sup> ..... Paul Matthews.

A: One moment, please. I'm <sup>4</sup> ..... you through.

C: Hello?

B: <sup>5</sup> ..... Mr James?

C: <sup>6</sup> .....

A: Good morning. Boulding Limited. Can I help you?

B: Yes. I'm trying to contact Simon Fallow. He left a <sup>7</sup> ..... on my <sup>8</sup> .....

A: I see. Well, I'm afraid Mr Fallow's <sup>9</sup> ..... at the moment. Can I ask him to

<sup>10</sup> ..... you ..... later?

A: Hello.

B: Hi. <sup>11</sup> ..... Carlos?

A: Yeah, speaking.

B: Hi Carlos. <sup>12</sup> ..... Serena.

A: Oh hello. I was expecting you to ring last night.

B: I did, but I couldn't get <sup>13</sup> ..... ; the line was <sup>14</sup> .....

A: Oh yes, I'm sorry about that. I was <sup>15</sup> ..... the phone to my brother for about an hour.

## 52.3 What do these text abbreviations mean?

1 GRT = great

7 ASAP = .....

2 X = .....

8 FYI = .....

3 CUL8R = .....

9 LOL = .....

4 OIC = .....

10 THX = .....

5 B4N = .....

11 BF = .....

6 IMO = .....

12 U = .....

## 52.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

1 How often do you use a mobile phone? What do you use it for? How often do you text people? Who do you text?

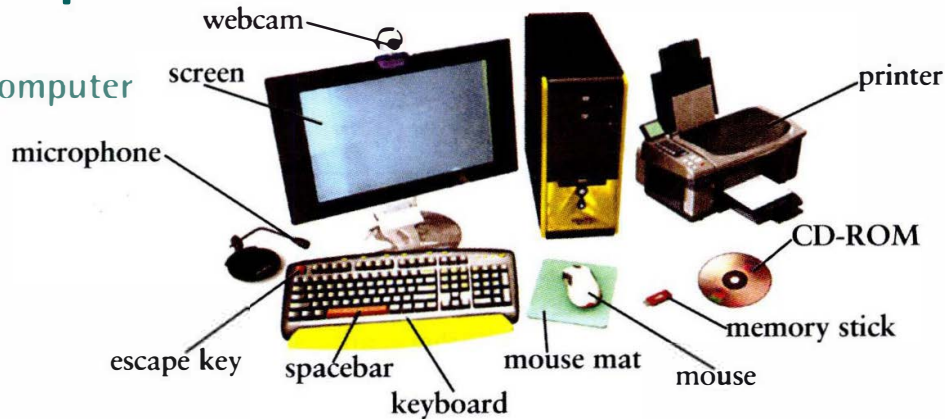
2 In your country, what is the emergency number for the police, fire brigade or ambulance?

3 From your country, what's the international dialling code for the United Kingdom?

4 How do you feel about people who use their mobile phone on a train?

## A

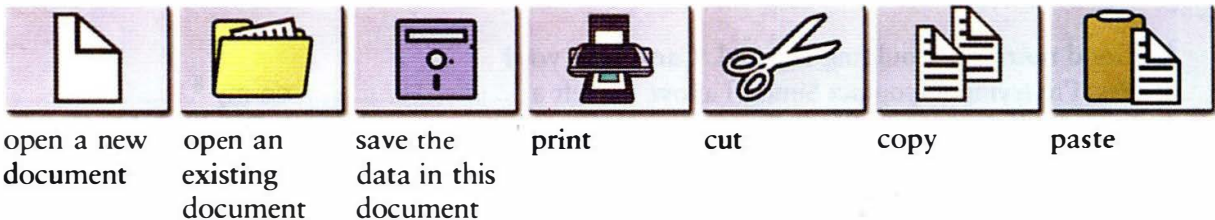
## The computer



## B

## Using a computer

After you have switched on [turned on] your computer, you may need to log in/on (*opp* log out/off) with your username and enter your password [put a special word into the computer that only you know]. If you then double-click on an icon [a small picture on the screen], you can open an application [email, Internet browser, etc.]. Computers can store [keep] large amounts of information, but when you're working it is important to back up the files you are working on [make an extra copy of the files; *syn* make a backup], so you don't lose the files if something goes wrong.



To create [make or start] a new document, select NEW from the File menu. You can copy and paste information from one file into another. If you save the document, you can print it out later (OR you can get a hard copy / a printout later). It is also important to save the document in case the computer crashes [suddenly stops working]. Press the Escape key to exit [stop using an application].

## C

## FAQs\* about computers

www.irLanguage.com

example question	explanation
• Do you have a PC or a laptop?	PC is short for personal computer; a laptop is a small computer that you can carry around.
• What hard drive do you have?	the part inside the computer that stores large amounts of information (also hard disk)
• What operating system are you using?	computer software, e.g. Windows or Mac OS, that controls how the computer works
• Have you installed any new software?	put new programs onto your computer
• What software applications are you running?	What software applications are you using?
• Do you have anti-virus software?	A virus is a program put on a computer to destroy or steal the information on it. Anti-virus software is a program to stop a virus entering your computer.

\*frequently asked questions

# Exercises


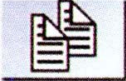





## 53.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |              |                            |            |
|--------------|----------------------------|------------|
| 1 CD-        | <input type="checkbox"/> e | a system   |
| 2 memory     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | b on       |
| 3 operating  | <input type="checkbox"/>   | c key      |
| 4 hard       | <input type="checkbox"/>   | d software |
| 5 log        | <input type="checkbox"/>   | e ROM      |
| 6 anti-virus | <input type="checkbox"/>   | f mat      |
| 7 mouse      | <input type="checkbox"/>   | g copy     |
| 8 escape     | <input type="checkbox"/>   | h stick    |

## 53.2 Complete these words.

- |                  |              |             |
|------------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1 soft.ware..... | 3 key.....   | 5 user..... |
| 2 lap.....       | 4 space..... | 6 pass..... |

## 53.3 Test your knowledge. Can you remember what these icons mean without looking at the opposite page?

- |   |   |  |   |
|---|---|--|---|
|    |    |    |  |
| 1 open a new document.....  | 2 .....   | 3 .....  | 4 .....   |
|  |  |  |   |
| 5 .....   | 6 .....   | 7 .....  |   |

## 53.4 Complete the definitions.

- Computer software that controls how different parts work together is the operating system.
- The part inside the computer that stores large amounts of information is the .....
- A program secretly put on a computer to destroy the information on it is a .....
- A small computer that you can carry round with you is a .....
- The special word you type into your computer that only you know is your .....

## 53.5 Complete the dialogues.

- A: What do I do when I finish?  
B: You can press the escape key to exit.
- A: How often do you ..... your files?  
B: At the end of every day if I can remember.
- A: Is the data ..... on the hard disk?  
B: Yes, but I always make a .....
- A: Did you ..... the software yourself?  
B: No, I don't understand anything about computers. My wife did it for me.
- A: How do I ..... a new document?  
B: Just select **NEW** from the File .....
- A: There was a warning on the news this morning about a new computer .....
- B: Well, I should be OK. I've got ..... software.

## 53.6

### Over to you

Do you have a computer? If so, can you answer all the questions in section C on the opposite page?



## A Using email

Think about the way you use email.

- How often do you check your **email**? [look to see if you have any messages]
- How many emails do you send a week? Are they all **essential**? [important /necessary]
- How many emails do you get every week? Do you read them **immediately**? [without waiting]
- How quickly do you reply to [answer] the emails you receive?
- Do you delete emails **regularly**? [remove them from your computer often]
- Do you get much **spam**? [emails that you do not want, usually adverts; also called **junk mail**]
- Have you got **anti-virus software**? [a program that stops a virus entering your computer]
- How often do you send or receive **attachments**?



## Language help

In English an email address may be written as `pd@freeseve.co.uk`, but we say it like this: **pd at freeseve dot co dot uk.**

## B Getting started on the Internet

To go on the **Internet**, you need an **ISP** (Internet service provider) that will **connect** [join or link] your computer to the Internet and give you **access** to [the ability to use] email and other services. When you go **online** [use the Internet], you can then send and receive emails, or you can **browse** the Internet [look at websites]; you do this using a **browser** such as Internet Explorer or Firefox. Many websites also have **links**: if you **click** on a link, it will take you to a different website, or move you from one part of the website to another.

## C Using the Internet

Many people now have internet access and internet use is changing all the time. These are common uses.

- Students search the Internet [look for information on the Internet; also do an **Internet search**] to help with their studies.
- People **download** [copy onto their computer; *opp* **upload**] information, pictures, music, video clips [small parts of a video recording], etc.
- People buy books, clothes and food online, book their holidays online, take out insurance online, etc. People go to a website, select the item [product, e.g. a book] they want and click **add to basket/bag**. When they have finished shopping they go to **checkout** and pay for their items, usually with a credit card.
- Some people have a personal website to provide news about a particular subject, or just write about events in their life. These are called **blogs**, and people who write them are **bloggers**.
- Some people just like to spend hours **surfing** the web. [looking at different websites]
- Some people spend a lot of time on **social networking** sites [places on the Internet where you can have a discussion with other people, e.g. Facebook, Twitter, etc.]. On these sites people post comments [leave messages] to their friends.
- Some people do a lot of **instant messaging**. [send and receive messages in real time]



# Exercises

## 54.1 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |            |                                     |                      |
|------------|-------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 go       | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a the web            |
| 2 do       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b online             |
| 3 surf     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c emails             |
| 4 delete   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d on a link          |
| 5 download | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e an Internet search |
| 6 click    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f music              |

## 54.2 Answer the questions.

- 1 What can you do when you go online? Send emails and use the Internet
- 2 What does ISP stand for? .....
- 3 What does an ISP give you? .....
- 4 What are Safari, Internet Explorer and Firefox? .....
- 5 What do bloggers write about? .....
- 6 What is spam? .....
- 7 How do you say this: Zac@hotmail.com? .....
- 8 What do people do on social networking sites? .....

## 54.3 Complete the dialogues. The first letter of each answer has been given to help you.

- 1 A: A friend of mine has got his own blog.....  
B: Oh yeah. What does he write about?
- 2 A: Do you always reply to emails i..... ?  
B: Yes. I think it's rude if you don't reply as soon as you receive an email. Don't you do that?  
A: No. I don't reply at once unless it's really e.....
- 3 A: How can I view information about the computers they sell?  
B: Just c..... on that l....., and it will take you to the website which has the details.
- 4 A: Do you have internet a..... at your school?  
B: We do in school hours, but not before or after school.
- 5 A: I sent you an email earlier with an a..... Did you get it?  
B: Oh, I'm afraid I haven't c..... my email today yet. I'll do it now.
- 6 A: Do you d..... much stuff from the Internet?  
B: Well, music naturally, and I also d..... a few video c.....
- 7 A: I keep getting viruses on my computer.  
B: Ah, you will need to get some a..... v..... software.
- 8 A: Do you delete emails r..... ?  
B: Yes, every day. I have to, because I receive so many, and most of them aren't important.

## 54.4

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Do you go on the Internet? If so, what are your favourite websites?
- 2 Do you have a blog or read other people's? Whose blog do you read?
- 3 Do you download material from the Internet? What do you download?
- 4 Do you watch video clips on the Internet? What video clips do you watch?
- 5 Do you use social networking sites or instant messaging? Which websites do you use? Who do you talk to?



## A Different crimes

A **crime** is an activity that is wrong and not allowed by law. A person who **commits** a crime is a **criminal**.

crime	person	verb
<b>theft</b> [stealing something, e.g. a car]	<b>thief</b>	<b>steal/take</b> (something)
<b>robbery</b> [stealing from a person or place, e.g. a bank]	<b>robber</b>	<b>rob</b> (someone, a place)
<b>burglary</b> [getting into a building, usually someone's home, and stealing something]	<b>burglar</b>	<b>steal something</b> <b>burgle</b> (a place)
<b>murder</b> [killing someone]	<b>murderer</b>	<b>murder</b>

Someone's **stolen/taken** my handbag.

I don't know who **robbed** me.

Our flat was **burgled**, but they only took money.

There's been another **burglary** in the area.

Did you hear about the **bank robbery** yesterday?

Do they know who **murdered** the boy?

## B Reporting crimes in the media

Two women robbed a jeweller's shop in West London early this morning. They **broke in**<sup>1</sup> around 7 o'clock and stole jewellery **worth**<sup>2</sup> over £10,000.

<sup>1</sup> entered the building using force, e.g. broke a window

<sup>2</sup> with a value of

The two men **attacked**<sup>3</sup> Mr Crawford while he was walking home yesterday afternoon. Police say the two men **hit** him in the face several times, then took his money and **escaped**<sup>4</sup> through Bushy Park.

<sup>3</sup> used physical violence to hurt him

<sup>4</sup> left the place to avoid danger; *syn* got away

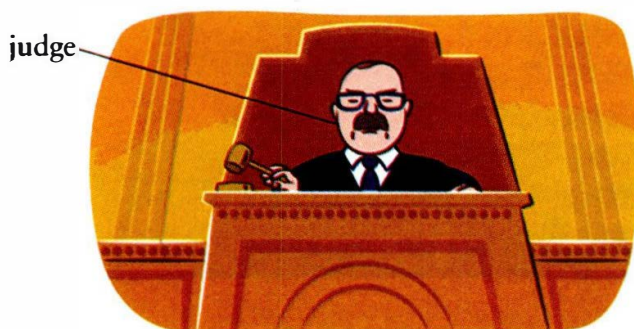
**Detectives**<sup>5</sup> **arrested**<sup>6</sup> a man this morning in connection with the murder of shop assistant, Tracey Miles.

<sup>5</sup> police officers who try to find information to solve crimes

<sup>6</sup> If you *arrest* someone, you take them to the police station because you believe they committed a crime. That person is then **under arrest**.

## C Punishment\*

If you commit a crime and the police **catch** you [find you and arrest you], you will be **punished**. For **minor offences** [crimes that are not very important; *opp* serious], the punishment may only be a **fine** [money you have to pay], but for serious crimes, you will **have to go to court**. If you are found **guilty** [the judge, or a jury of 12 people, decides you committed the crime; *opp* innocent], you may be sent to **prison** (*syn* jail).



court



prison

\* what a person must suffer if they do something wrong

# Exercises

55.1 Test your knowledge. Can you complete this table without looking at the opposite page?

noun	person	verb
crime	criminal	
murder		
theft		
robbery		
burglary		

55.2 Find five more pairs of words that have a similar meaning.

<del>catch</del> theft crime jail prison <del>arrest</del> get away steal offence hit escape attack
--

catch - arrest .....

.....

55.3 Complete the dialogues.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 A: Is it being decided by a judge?<br>B: No, there will be a <u>jury</u> ..... | 6 A: Will she go to prison?<br>B: No, she just has to pay a<br>.....                      |
| 2 A: Have the police caught the man?<br>B: Yes, he's under .....                 | 7 A: Have you ever broken the law?<br>B: Yes, but I've never committed a serious<br>..... |
| 3 A: Is she guilty?<br>B: No, the jury found her .....                           | 8 A: How do you think he will be<br>.....?  |
| 4 A: He killed his wife?<br>B: Yes, he's under arrest for .....                  | B: Well, it wasn't a very serious crime, so<br>it'll probably be a fine.                  |
| 5 A: Was it a serious crime?<br>B: No, just a minor .....                        |   |

55.4 Complete the news report.

Two men are <sup>1</sup> under ..... arrest for <sup>2</sup> ..... clothes from a warehouse\* in Bristol. The two men <sup>3</sup> ..... into the warehouse late yesterday evening, <sup>4</sup> ..... the guard and tied him up, then <sup>5</sup> ..... a collection of expensive designer outfits <sup>6</sup> ..... over £40,000. A passer-by saw lights on in the warehouse and rang the police, but the two men managed to <sup>7</sup> ..... through a back door and then drove off with the stolen clothes. However, one of the men was later caught and <sup>8</sup> ..... at his home, and <sup>9</sup> ..... caught the second man just hours later hiding at a friend's house. Both men have now been charged with <sup>10</sup> ..... and will appear before a judge in <sup>11</sup> ..... on Monday. If they are found <sup>12</sup> ..... , the two men will go to <sup>13</sup> ..... for a number of years. The guard who was attacked has now been released from hospital.

\* A warehouse is a large building for storing goods that are going to be sold.



# 56 Politics

## A Elections in the UK

When you **vote** for someone, you choose them by putting a cross (X) on an official piece of paper (called a **secret ballot** because no one knows who you vote for), or by putting up your hand. In the UK, a **general election** is when the people **elect**<sup>1</sup> the next **government**<sup>2</sup>. These elections are held<sup>3</sup> at least every five years. Each **constituency**<sup>4</sup> elects one person from one **political party**. That person then becomes the **MP** (Member of Parliament) for that area, and the political party with the most MPs – there are 650 at the moment – forms the next government. The **leader**<sup>5</sup> of the party **in power**<sup>6</sup> is the prime minister.

<sup>1</sup> choose by voting

<sup>2</sup> the group of people who control the country

<sup>3</sup> organised

<sup>4</sup> an area where people vote

<sup>5</sup> the person in control

<sup>6</sup> in control (of the country)

### Language help

noun	person	adjective
politics	politician	political
power		powerful

## B Political policies

People usually vote for a political party because they believe in the party's ideas [think the ideas are good or right], and these ideas become policies [sets of plans and ideas that a political party has agreed on].

## VOTE FOR US AND WE WILL ...

✓ **provide**<sup>1</sup> free nursery education for all children

✓ provide more **care**<sup>2</sup> and **support**<sup>3</sup> for **elderly**<sup>4</sup> people

✓ **reduce**<sup>5</sup> unemployment

✓ create a **fair**<sup>6</sup> **tax**<sup>7</sup> system

**Above all**<sup>8</sup>, we will **treat**<sup>9</sup> people as **equal**<sup>10</sup>.



<sup>1</sup> give something to those who need it (also **provide** someone with something)

<sup>2</sup> looking after people, especially old people

<sup>3</sup> help (sometimes in the form of money)

<sup>4</sup> old

<sup>5</sup> make less; *syn* cut

<sup>6</sup> dealing with everyone in the same way; *opp* **unfair**

<sup>7</sup> money people must pay the government

<sup>8</sup> most importantly

<sup>9</sup> behave or deal with someone in a particular way

<sup>10</sup> having the same importance; *adv* **equally**

### Language help

verb	noun
believe in sth	<b>belief</b>
reduce	<b>reduction</b>

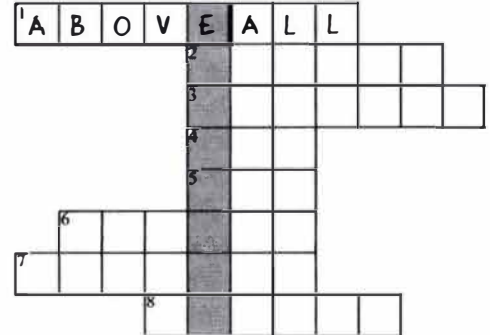
# Exercises

## 56.1 Complete the sentences using the correct form of the word on the right.

- |  |          |
|--|----------|
| 1 Have they set the date for the <u>election</u> ..... ? | ELECT    |
| 2 Employment is an important ..... issue.                | POLITICS |
| 3 My political ..... are important to me.                | BELIEVE  |
| 4 The president is a very ..... man.                     | POWER    |
| 5 I hope there will be a ..... in my tax.                | REDUCE   |
| 6 Do you believe what ..... say?                         | POLITICS |

## 56.2 Complete the crossword. What is the vertical word in grey?

- 1 Most importantly
- 2 Person in control of a political party
- 3 Another word for 'old'
- 4 A synonym for 'reduce'
- 5 Money people must pay to the government
- 6 A set of plans and ideas that a group agree on
- 7 Help, often in the form of money
- 8 Not fair



## 56.3 Rewrite the sentences on the left starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 They are in control of the country.     | They are in <u>power</u> ..... |
| 2 They elected her.                       | They voted .....               |
| 3 Elections take place every five years.  | Elections are .....            |
| 4 They will give hospitals more money.    | They will provide .....        |
| 5 No one knows who you vote for.          | It's a secret .....            |
| 6 It's a fair system for everyone.        | The system treats .....        |
| 7 Our policy is to look after old people. | Our policy is to provide ..... |

## 56.4 Complete the text.

In Canada, <sup>1</sup> elections..... work in a similar way to the UK. Canada is divided into 308 political <sup>2</sup>....., but they are called 'ridings' in Canada, and altogether there are 19 registered <sup>3</sup>..... parties in the country. <sup>4</sup>..... are held every five years, and people <sup>5</sup>..... for just one person in each riding to become their member of <sup>6</sup>..... The <sup>7</sup>..... that wins the most ridings is then asked by the Governor-General to form the next <sup>8</sup>....., and the leader of that party becomes <sup>9</sup>..... minister.

## 56.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 How many major political parties are there in your country?
- 2 Which party is in power at the moment?
- 3 When were they elected?
- 4 Who is the leader of this party?
- 5 Did you vote in this election?

## 56.6

### Over to you

Look at the policies in section B on the opposite page. What do you think of them? If you were in power, would you have these policies? What policies would you have? If possible, compare your answers with someone else.



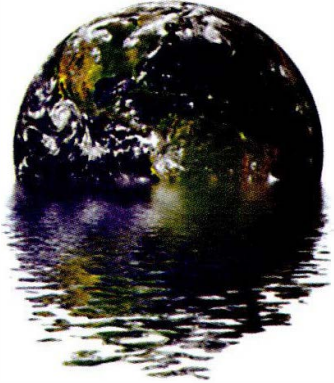
## A

## The problem

Many **greenhouse gases**, e.g. carbon dioxide, methane and ozone, **exist**<sup>1</sup> naturally and are needed to **create**<sup>2</sup> the **greenhouse effect** that keeps the Earth warm enough to **support**<sup>3</sup> human life. However, the use of **fossil fuels**, e.g. **oil**, natural gas and coal, has produced **excessive**<sup>4</sup> amounts of greenhouse gases, and the **result**<sup>5</sup> is **global warming**: an increase in the average temperature on Earth. Of the 20 warmest years **on record**<sup>6</sup>, 19 have **occurred**<sup>7</sup> since 1980.

The **effects**<sup>8</sup> of **climate change** can already be seen in our everyday lives. Summers are getting hotter and winters are getting wetter, so **drought**<sup>9</sup> and **floods**<sup>10</sup> are becoming more common. With it, animal and plant life is **suffering**<sup>11</sup> – some species will disappear altogether – and certain illnesses, e.g. hay fever, asthma and skin cancer, are becoming more common.

To stop global warming from **destroying**<sup>12</sup> our **environment**<sup>13</sup>, we need to act now.


<sup>1</sup> are real or present<sup>2</sup> make something happen or exist<sup>3</sup> help (human life) to continue<sup>4</sup> more than you want or need<sup>5</sup> something that happens because of something else that has happened<sup>6</sup> If information is *on record*, it has been written down or kept on a computer.<sup>7</sup> happened; *fml*<sup>8</sup> a change or result that is caused by something<sup>9</sup> a long time without rain when people do not have enough water<sup>10</sup> when water covers an area that is usually dry, often from too much rain<sup>11</sup> experiencing something which is unpleasant<sup>12</sup> damaging something so badly that it does not exist or cannot be used<sup>13</sup> the air, land and water around us

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

## B

## The solution\* – or part of it

To **reduce** global warming [make it less], the nations of the world will have to act together [do something to solve a problem; *syn take action*]. In the meantime, individuals can also help.

### Six ways to reduce global warming:

→ Don't throw things away – **recycle** paper, glass, plastic, etc. so that it can be used again.

→ Don't **waste**<sup>3</sup> water, e.g. turn off the **tap** when you are brushing your teeth.

→ **Save**<sup>1</sup> **energy**<sup>2</sup> e.g. **switch off** lights when you leave a room.

→ Change **light bulbs** for more **energy-efficient**<sup>4</sup> ones

→ Drive less and walk more.

→ **Plant trees**<sup>5</sup> because trees reduce the amount of carbon dioxide in the atmosphere, and so reduce greenhouse gases.

\*the answer to a problem

<sup>1</sup> don't waste<sup>2</sup> gas and electricity<sup>3</sup> use it badly<sup>4</sup> working well and not wasting energy<sup>5</sup> put a new tree in the ground



# Exercises

**57.1** How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

- |                  |   |    |                   |  |
|------------------|---|----|-------------------|--|
| 1 <u>g</u> lobal | Is it like <u>g</u> o or <u>g</u> ot?   | go | 4 <u>d</u> rought | Is it like <u>n</u> o or <u>n</u> ow?              |
| 2 <u>f</u> lood  | Is it like <u>f</u> oot or <u>f</u> un? |    | 5 <u>s</u> uffer  | Is it like <u>s</u> on or <u>s</u> oon?            |
| 3 <u>f</u> uel   | Is it like <u>f</u> ood or <u>f</u> ew? |    | 6 <u>c</u> limate | Is it like <u>e</u> ducate or <u>c</u> omfortable? |

**57.2** Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                  |                                     |           |
|------------------|-------------------------------------|-----------|
| 1 the greenhouse | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a warming |
| 2 global         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b change  |
| 3 fossil         | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c effect  |
| 4 greenhouse     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d fuels   |
| 5 climate        | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e gases   |

**57.3** How can we help with global warming? Cover the opposite page and complete the text.

- Don't <sup>1</sup> throw away ..... paper, glass and plastic; <sup>2</sup> ..... it.
- Don't <sup>3</sup> ..... water: turn off the <sup>4</sup> ..... when you brush your teeth.
- <sup>5</sup> ..... energy by <sup>6</sup> ..... off lights when you leave a room.
- <sup>7</sup> ..... trees in order to <sup>8</sup> ..... the amount of carbon dioxide.
- <sup>9</sup> ..... action now, before it's too late.

**57.4** Complete the explanations.

- 1 We don't have to create greenhouse gases; they exist ..... naturally.
- 2 Greenhouse gases in the atmosphere ..... the greenhouse effect.
- 3 Global warming is the ..... of an increase in the amount of greenhouse gases.
- 4 Two ..... of climate change have been hotter summers and wetter winters.
- 5 A ..... is often the result of too much rain when the rivers are full.
- 6 A ..... is a long period without rain, and they are ..... more frequently now.
- 7 The ..... is the air, land and water around us.
- 8 If you ..... something, it is so badly damaged, it cannot be used again.
- 9 If something is ..... , it works well and doesn't waste energy.
- 10 ..... is the power that comes from gas, electricity, etc.

**57.5** Complete the tables. Use a dictionary to help you.

verb	noun	verb	noun
recycle	recycling		solution
waste		reduce	
destroy		support	
exist		suffer	

**57.6**

## Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, talk to someone else about the problems.

- 1 Can you see the effects of global warming and climate change in your country? What do you see?
- 2 What things do people recycle every week?
- 3 Do you think you often waste water and energy? How?
- 4 What more could you do to solve the problem? Does it worry you?

## A

## The job of the army



These men are soldiers, and they are **carrying guns**<sup>1</sup>. They are members of an **army**, and part of the responsibility of an army is to **defend** their country from **attack**<sup>2</sup> and to protect the people<sup>3</sup>. Sometimes this means they have to **fight the enemy**<sup>4</sup>. A long period of fighting is called a **war**, e.g. the First World War, 1914–1918, and during a war there will be a number of **battles**<sup>5</sup>.

<sup>1</sup> have guns with them

<sup>2</sup> stop others who use violence against their country

<sup>3</sup> keep them safe

<sup>4</sup> the people they are fighting against

<sup>5</sup> fights between two armies

## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

**Violence** is when someone tries to hurt or kill someone; the adjective is **violent**.

*The violence has increased in recent weeks; There have been a number of violent attacks.*

## B

## Reporting in war

Ten people were **killed** and many more were injured when a **bomb exploded** (see picture) in **the heart of**<sup>1</sup> the city. The attack happened just before midday, and **destroyed**<sup>2</sup> several buildings. The army are now **searching**<sup>3</sup> the area where the attack **took place**<sup>4</sup>. Most of the attackers **escaped**<sup>5</sup>, but the army believe they may still be **hiding**<sup>6</sup> in other parts of the city.

During the attack, one soldier was **shot**<sup>7</sup> and later died. It also appears that another soldier is **missing**<sup>8</sup>. The number of **deaths**<sup>9</sup> is expected to rise.



<sup>1</sup> the centre of

<sup>2</sup> damaged them so badly that they don't exist now; NOT ~~completely damaged~~

<sup>3</sup> trying to find someone or something

<sup>4</sup> happened

<sup>5</sup> left the place without being caught; *syn* get away

<sup>6</sup> staying in a place where you cannot be seen or found

<sup>7</sup> injured by a gun

<sup>8</sup> It isn't known where someone or something is

<sup>9</sup> people who are dead / have died

## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

Several words in the unit can be used as verbs and nouns with a similar meaning.

*They're **searching** for them.*

*They're **continuing their search** for them.*

*He can't **escape**.*

*There is no **escape**.*

*When did they **attack**?*

*Where did the **attack** take place?*

# Exercises

## 58.1 Are these words *nouns*, *verbs*, or *nouns* and *verbs*?

protect	verb	shoot	.....
search	noun and verb	war	.....
die	.....	defend	.....
attack	.....	escape	.....
death	.....	hide	.....

## 58.2 Complete the sentences with the correct verb.

- The soldiers have been *fighting* ..... for days, and so far three have been injured.
- The woman was ..... with a small handgun, but wasn't seriously injured.
- One of the soldiers managed to ..... under the house where no one could find him.
- There are 20 soldiers surrounding the house, so the men inside cannot .....
- The bomb ..... inside the café. Nobody was ..... but several people were injured.
- I understand the army are ..... houses in an effort to find the gunman.
- The bomb completely ..... the building, but fortunately no one was inside at the time.
- My men had to ..... the village from outside attacks.
- Were the police ..... guns when they saw the men?

## 58.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- One man was found but the other is still *lost* / *missing*.
- The *battle* / *war* lasted for two hours.
- The attack happened in the *heart* / *centre* of the city.
- One of the buildings was completely *damaged* / *destroyed*.
- Three of the men are *died* / *dead*.
- One woman *escaped* / *got away*.
- The boy was badly injured and later *died* / *killed*.
- Some of the policemen are not allowed to *hold* / *carry* guns.
- They don't know who *shoot* / *shot* the man.

## 58.4 Complete the text.

The <sup>1</sup> *attack* ..... happened early this morning. The <sup>2</sup> ..... were out on patrol when they saw the <sup>3</sup> ..... about half a mile away. Moments later a <sup>4</sup> ..... exploded quite close to them, and was followed by a <sup>5</sup> ..... gun battle which lasted two hours. Two soldiers were <sup>6</sup> ..... and several were injured. An <sup>7</sup> ..... captain said that they have now taken control of the area where the attack <sup>8</sup> .....

## 58.5 Use a dictionary to develop these word families, and write example sentences for the new words.

verb	noun	example
protect	protection	The army gave the families protection.
destroy		
explode		
defend		



# 59 Time

## A Phrases with *time*

We got to the meeting **in time**. [before the meeting started]  
My brother is always **on time**. [not early or late]  
It's **time** (for us) to go. [used to say that something should happen now]  
Do you **have time** for a cup of coffee? [have enough time to do something]  
Call me **the next time** you're in London. [on the next occasion]  
The weather was wonderful **the last time** we were there. [on the last occasion]  
Sophie and I arrived at **the same time**, 9 o'clock exactly.

## B Time prepositions often confused

I'll be here **until** 4.30. [I won't leave before 4.30]  
I'll be there **by** 8.15. [not later than 8.15]  
I've worked here **for** six months. (*for* + a period of time, e.g. a week, ten days, two years)  
I've worked here **since** May. (*since* + a point in time in the past, e.g. last Friday, March, 2001)  
I worked on a farm **during** the summer. (this tells you 'when')  
I worked on a farm **for** a month. (this tells you 'how long') (NOT ~~during~~ a month)  
I'm going back to Brazil in ten days' **time**. [ten days from now] (NOT ~~after~~ ten days)

## C Approximate periods of time – past, present and future

### Past

I've known Lucia **for ages**. [for a long time, e.g. many years]  
I haven't been to the dentist **recently/lately**. [e.g. in the last few months]  
I saw Tom **recently**. [e.g. a few weeks ago / not long ago]  
I used to go skiing, but that was a **long time ago**. [e.g. 5–10 years ago; *syn* ages ago]  
My sister went to the zoo **the other day**. [e.g. a few days ago, perhaps a week]

### Present

I don't see my brother much these days. [a period including the past and now; *syn* nowadays]

### Future

This dictionary's **fine for the time being**. [for now / the near future – but not for a long time]  
I'm sure I'll go to America **one day**. [in the future but I don't know when]

## D Counting time

There are 60 seconds in a minute; 60 minutes in an hour; 24 hours in a day; 7 days in a week; 2 weeks in a **fortnight**; 52 weeks in a year; 10 years in a decade; 100 years in a **century**.

## E *Take and last*

We use **take** to say how long we need to do something.  
It **takes me** half an hour to get to school.  
We can walk, but it'll **take (us)** a long time.

We use **last** to talk about how long something continues, from the beginning to the end.  
The course **lasts for** ten weeks.  
How long does the film **last**?  
The battery in my camera didn't **last long**. [continue for a long time]

# Exercises

## 59.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I'll see you the next ..... time I come to London.
- 2 The shop closes at 5.30. If we don't hurry, we'll never get there ..... time.
- 3 I always get to meetings ..... time; I hate it when people are late.
- 4 I'm afraid I won't ..... time to see you this week.
- 5 I'll have to go soon. It's time ..... me to pick up the children from school.
- 6 Marcel and I got to the station at the ..... time.

## 59.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I'll see you (in) / *after* ten days' time.
- 2 The teacher told us to finish our homework *by* / *until* Monday.
- 3 We can't leave *by* / *until* the others get back.
- 4 I've been in the army *for* / *since* I was eighteen.
- 5 They've worked here *for* / *since* / *during* six months.
- 6 I visit my uncle every week *for* / *since* / *during* the winter.
- 7 I was at university *for* / *since* / *during* three years.
- 8 She's going back to France *in* / *after* three months' time.
- 9 I haven't seen them *for* / *since* last Thursday.

## 59.3 Replace the underlined words with more 'approximate' time expressions.

- 1 I had my hair cut two weeks ago. *recently*.....
- 2 I went to Egypt with my parents but that was ten years ago. .....
- 3 I went to the library three days ago. .....
- 4 I haven't been to the cinema for the last three weeks. .....
- 5 I haven't been to a concert for three or four years. .....
- 6 This computer will be fine for the next year. .....

## 59.4 Test your general knowledge. Can you complete these sentences with the correct number or period of time?

- 1 Michael Jackson died in 2009..... .
- 2 The Olympic Games usually last about a ..... .
- 3 Picasso was born in the .....th century, and died in the .....th century.
- 4 President Kennedy died in ..... . That's over ..... years ago.
- 5 It takes approximately ..... hours to fly from London to New York.
- 6 The best athletes can run 100 metres in less than ..... seconds.
- 7 The ..... was the decade in which the USA and USSR were trying to be the first country to put a man on the moon.

## 59.5

### Over to you

Complete the sentences about yourself. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 I've been in my present school/university/job for .....
- 2 It takes me ..... to get to school/university/work.
- 3 A typical school/college/working day for me lasts .....
- 4 I've been studying English since .....
- 5 I haven't actually spoken English since .....
- 6 I saw ..... the other day.
- 7 Nowadays I don't .....
- 8 One day I hope .....



## A Cardinal numbers

379 = three hundred and seventy-nine  
 5,084 = five thousand and eighty-four  
 2,000,000 = two million

2,860 = two thousand, eight hundred and sixty  
 470,000 = four hundred and seventy thousand  
 3,000,000,000 = three billion

## Language help

There is no plural 's' after *hundred*, *thousand*, *million* and *billion* when they are part of a number. When we are talking generally, they are plural, e.g. *thousands of people*, *millions of insects*.

## B Dates

With dates, we write them and say them in a different way. We can write 4 June or June 4<sup>th</sup>, but say the fourth of June or June the fourth.

We can write 21 May or May 21<sup>st</sup>, but say the twenty-first of May or May the twenty-first.

1997 = nineteen ninety-seven; 2010 = two thousand and ten or twenty ten

## Common mistakes

The seventh of April (NOT The seven April); the fourth question (NOT the four question)

## C Fractions and decimals

$1\frac{1}{4}$  = one and a quarter

1.25 = one point two five

$1\frac{1}{2}$  = one and a half

1.5 = one point five

$1\frac{3}{4}$  = one and three quarters

1.75 = one point seven five

## D Percentages

26% is spoken as twenty-six per cent. More than 50% of something is the majority of it, less than 50% of something is the minority:

The vast majority of the students (e.g. 95%) agreed with the new plan, only a small minority (e.g. 5%) were unhappy.

## E Calculations

There are four basic processes. Notice how they are said when we are working out [trying to calculate] the answer.

+ = addition e.g.  $6 + 4 = 10$  (six plus/and four equals/is ten)

- = subtraction e.g.  $6 - 4 = 2$  (six minus four is two)

x = multiplication e.g.  $6 \times 4 = 24$  (six multiplied by / times four is twenty-four)

÷ = division e.g.  $8 \div 2 = 4$  (eight divided by two is four)

Some people are not very good at adding up numbers [putting numbers together to reach a total], and often get stuck [have a problem] if they have to work out something quite difficult. The easiest way is to use a calculator [a small electronic machine for working out numbers].

## E Saying '0'

'0' can be spoken in different ways in different situations:

telephone number: 603449 = six oh three, double four nine OR six zero three, double four nine

mathematics: 0.7 = nought point seven; 6.02 = six point oh two OR six point nought two

temperature: -10 degrees = ten degrees below zero OR minus ten degrees

# Exercises

**60.1** How do you say these numbers in English? Write the answers in words, then practise saying them.

- 1 462 *four hundred and sixty-two*
- 2  $2\frac{1}{2}$
- 3 2,345
- 4 0.25
- 5 1,250,000
- 6 10.04
- 7 47%
- 8 10 September
- 9 940338 (phone number)
- 10 -5 Celsius
- 11 in 1996
- 12 2012

**60.2** Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Two thousand and five hundred. *Two thousand, five hundred*
- 2 After the game, I heard that the crowd was over twenty thousands.
- 3 We arrived on the seven June.
- 4 There were two hundred twenty altogether.
- 5 My birthday is the thirty-one August.
- 6 My phone number is seven twenty-three, six nought nine.

**60.3** Complete the sentences.

- 1 Eight *multiplied* by seven is fifty-six.
- 2 The ..... were in favour of the new airport; about 80%, I think.
- 3 A small ..... did not support the idea, but it was only 5%.
- 4 I'm not very good at arithmetic. I always have to use a .....
- 5 When I tried to add ..... all the numbers, I couldn't ..... it out.
- 6 I can do simple calculations, but I get ..... if the numbers are very big.

**60.4** Can you work out the answers? If you find it difficult, use paper or a calculator.

- 1 23 and 36 is *fifty-nine*
- 2 24 times 3 is .....
- 3 80 minus 20 is .....
- 4 65 divided by 13 is .....
- 5 Add 10 and 6, multiply by 3, then subtract 15 and divide by 11. What number is left? .....
- 6 Divide 33 by 11, multiply by 7, add 10, and subtract 16. What number is left? .....

**60.5**

## Over to you

Answer the questions. Write your answers in words.

- 1 When were you born? .....
- 2 How tall are you? .....
- 3 What's the number of the flat or house where you live? .....
- 4 When's your birthday? .....
- 5 What's the approximate population of your town? .....
- 6 What's your body temperature? .....

## A Distance: how far ...

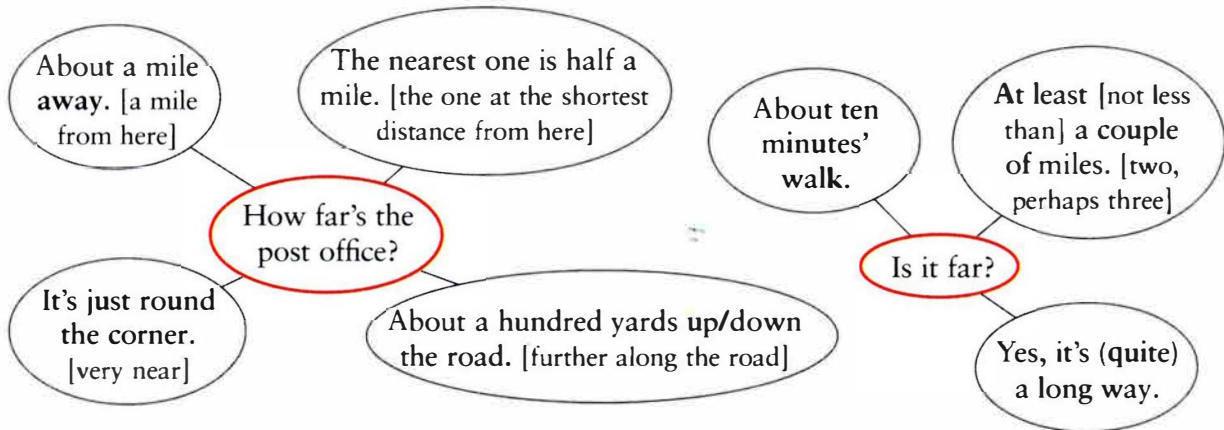
British people buy most things in metres, centimetres and millimetres, but they still often talk about distance using the old system of miles [1 mile = about 1.6 kilometres], yards [1 yard = almost 1 metre], feet [1 foot = 30 centimetres], and inches [1 inch = 2.5 centimetres].

## Common mistakes

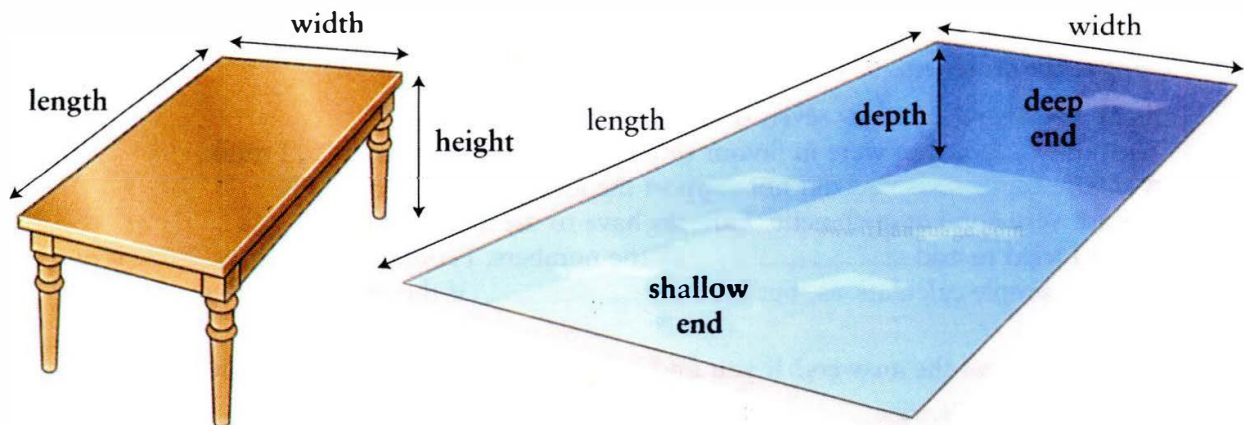
It's ten minutes' walk from here.  
(NOT ten minutes' walking.)

It's a long way. (NOT It's far.)

But we can say 'No, it isn't far.'



## B Dimensions: how long or wide ...

Common mistakes [www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Paul is quite tall (NOT quite high). It's a tall tree/building (NOT a high tree/building). It's a high mountain (NOT a tall mountain).

We can ask about the dimensions like this:

What's the length of the garage? OR How long is the garage?

What's the width of the path? OR How wide is the path?

What's the height of the wall? OR How high is the wall?

What's the depth of the pool? OR How deep is the pool?

It's five metres (long).

It's a metre (wide).

It's two metres (high).

It's three metres (deep).

## C Size: how big or small ...

We use a range of adjectives to describe the size of something.

It was a very thick book – over 500 pages. (*opp* a thin book)

Their living room is huge. [very big; *syn* enormous; *opp* a tiny room]

We caught a giant crab. [very large or bigger than other similar things]

It was a very narrow road for a bus. (*opp* a wide road)



# Exercises

## 61.1 Disagree with the speaker in each dialogue.

- 1 A: It's only a thin book, isn't it?  
B: No, it's quite thick.
- 2 A: The water's deep in the middle, isn't it?  
B: No, .....
- 3 A: Is the road very wide at that point?  
B: No, .....
- 4 A: James is quite short, isn't he?  
B: No, .....
- 5 A: They only live in a small place, don't they?  
B: No, .....
- 6 A: Is it a really huge pool?  
B: No, .....

## 61.2 Complete the questions (in two ways) about the lake, the mountain, the woman and the football pitch.



- |                                      |                           |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1 How <u>deep</u> ..... is the lake? | 5 How ..... is she?       |
| 2 What's ..... the lake?             | 6 What's her ..... ?      |
| 3 How ..... is the mountain?         | 7 How ..... is the pitch? |
| 4 What's ..... the mountain?         | 8 What's ..... the pitch? |

## 61.3

### Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Think about the building you are in now, and answer the questions using expressions from the opposite page.

- 1 How far is it to the nearest shop? .....
- 2 How far is it to a bank? .....
- 3 Is it very far to the nearest bus stop? .....
- 4 Is it very far to a post office? .....
- 5 Is it a long way to the nearest swimming pool? .....
- 6 Is it a long way to the next big town? .....
- 7 How far is the nearest train station? .....
- 8 Is it far to the centre of town? .....

www.irLanguage.com

## A Objects<sup>1</sup> and materials<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> things you can see or touch    <sup>2</sup> what something is made of or from



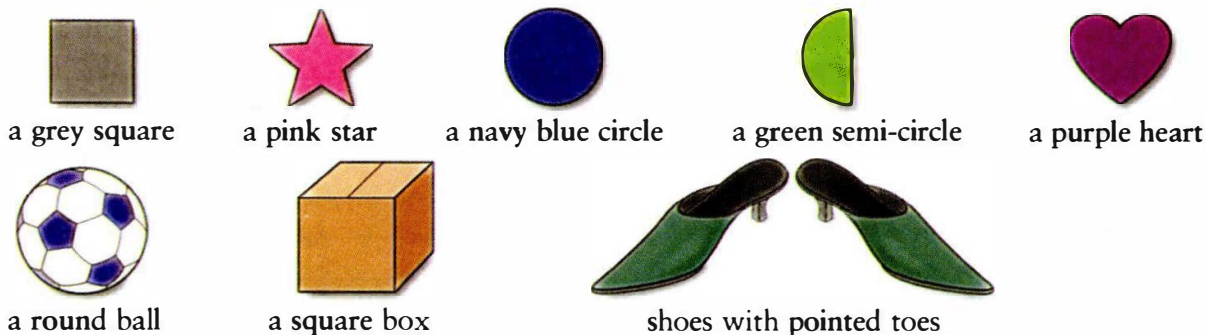
object	material	description
1 a bell	metal	used in hotel receptions
2 a chair	wood	an antique [an object that is old and often rare or beautiful]
3 a hat	fur	made from a real animal
4 a bone	rubber	a toy for dogs
5 a flag	cloth, e.g. cotton	the Italian national flag
6 a shirt	cotton	it has red stripes
7 a top	silk	beautifully soft and stylish
8 a sofa	leather	stylish [fashionable and attractive]
9 a ladder	metal	light and easy to carry
10 a tissue	paper	a soft piece of paper that you use for cleaning your nose
11 a bucket	plastic	used to clean floors

### Language help

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Most of the materials above can be adjectives or nouns, e.g. *a cotton shirt*, or *a shirt made of cotton*; *a leather sofa*, or *a sofa made of leather*. The exception is wood: a chair made of wood is *a wooden chair*.

## B Shapes and colours



### Language help

When we want to say that a shape is 'almost round' or a colour is 'a sort of green', we can also express this idea with the suffix *-ish*, e.g. *She had a roundish face*; *He wore a greenish tie*.

# Exercises

62.1 Put the words into the correct columns.

bell circle pink silk flag grey cotton purple  
plastic bucket fur ladder square navy blue

objects	materials	shapes	colours
bell			

62.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |             |                                     |                                |  |
|-------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------|--|
| 1 a plastic | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a scarf                        |  |
| 2 a silk    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b hat                          |  |
| 3 a rubber  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c belt                         |  |
| 4 a fur     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d toy                          |  |
| 5 a cotton  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e tyre (on the wheel of a car) |  |
| 6 a leather | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f T-shirt                      |  |

62.3 Label the objects, and their shape or colour.



1 a grey sofa.....



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

62.4 Which object is being described?

- 1 It's got a point at one end and that's the end you write with. *a pencil*.....
- 2 It's a shellfish. It is usually grey, but it goes pink when you cook it. ....
- 3 It can be metal or plastic and you often put water in it to wash floors. ....
- 4 It is usually made of wood or metal, and you climb up it. ....
- 5 At certain times of the month it's round; at others, it's closer to a semi-circle. ....
- 6 An adult human body has 206 of these. ....

62.5

## Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Do you wear shoes with pointed toes?
- 2 What clothes do you have that are pink, purple or navy blue?
- 3 Do you wear anything that has stripes? If so, what?
- 4 Do you have any clothes that are made from silk or fur?
- 5 What things do you own that are made of leather?



## A

## Containers and contents\*



a bag of shopping



a bottle of apple juice



a jar of jam



a bowl of sugar



a jug of water



a packet of crisps



a can of cola



a box of chocolates



a packet of biscuits



a tin of fruit



a bar of chocolate



a carton of orange juice



a tube of toothpaste



a vase of flowers

\* the things inside something

## Language help

A tin usually has something we eat inside it; a can has something we drink.

## B

## Quantities\*

Just a drop of milk [a very small amount] and no sugar in my coffee, please.

I've cut three slices of beef; that should be enough for the sandwiches. (Or three pieces of beef)

I took my boss a bunch of flowers when I visited her hospital.

I need a sheet of paper. (Or a piece/bit of paper)

Carl bought two pairs of trousers and a pair of shoes yesterday.

I bought a couple of books. [two, perhaps three]

We saw several churches on our way here. [some but not a lot, e.g. between three and eight]

I bought half a dozen eggs at the supermarket. [six]

There are a dozen students in the class. [twelve]

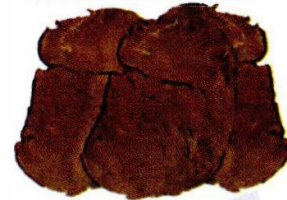
Could I have a spoonful of sugar in my tea?

We've got plenty of time. [a lot of]

The company is now making the toys in large quantities.

\* the amount or number of something

three slices of beef



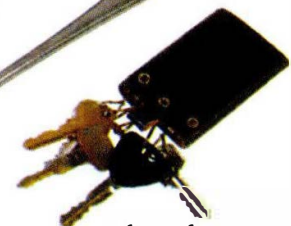
two sheets of paper



a spoonful of sugar



a bunch of keys



## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

We can usually use **slice** when talking about pieces of bread, cakes and meat. We can use **bunch** to talk about flowers, grapes, bananas and keys.

# Exercises

## 63.1 How do you pronounce the underlined letters? Use the index to help you.

- |               |   |      |                   |  |
|---------------|---|------|-------------------|--|
| 1 <u>tin</u>  | Is it like <u>fine</u> or <u>wind</u> ? | wind | 5 <u>couple</u>   | Is it like <u>pool</u> or <u>cup</u> ? |
| 2 <u>pair</u> | Is it like <u>car</u> or <u>care</u> ?  |      | 6 <u>dozen</u>    | Is it like <u>run</u> or <u>rob</u> ?  |
| 3 <u>vase</u> | Is it like <u>far</u> or <u>face</u> ?  |      | 7 <u>quantity</u> | Is it like <u>ran</u> or <u>want</u> ? |
| 4 <u>tube</u> | Is it like <u>noon</u> or <u>new</u> ?  |      |                   |  |

## 63.2 Complete the phrases below.



- |                                  |                      |
|----------------------------------|----------------------|
| 1 a <u>bottle</u> ..... of water | 6 a ..... of water   |
| 2 a ..... of spaghetti           | 7 a ..... of matches |
| 3 a ..... of fruit               | 8 a ..... of soap    |
| 4 a ..... of coffee              | 9 a ..... of apples  |
| 5 a ..... of milk                |                      |

## 63.3 Correct the mistake with the container.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 a <del>packet</del> of chocolate <u>bar</u> ..... | 5 a can of milk .....          |
| 2 a vase of jam .....                               | 6 a carton of toothpaste ..... |
| 3 a tube of cigarettes .....                        | 7 a jar of flowers .....       |
| 4 a tin of cola .....                               | 8 a jug of biscuits .....      |

## 63.4 Complete the sentences with one word.

- I need two pairs..... of socks inside these shoes.
- I gave her a big ..... of flowers from my garden.
- I cut about six ..... of bread and put them on a plate.
- Could you get half a ..... more chairs?
- The teacher told us to take out a blank ..... of paper.
- I like to put a ..... of cream in my coffee.
- There's no need to hurry – we've got ..... of time.
- I met a ..... of friends – Adri and Danielle – on the way to the station.
- She opened her bag on the table, turned it upside down, and all the ..... fell out.
- Tennis is quite popular in our office. I know ..... people who play.

## 63.5 Cross out the wrong answer.

- Could you get a carton of *milk* / *juice* / ~~*coffee*~~?
- I bought a bunch of *grapes* / *bananas* / *apples*.
- There were *a couple of* / *a pair of* / *several* people waiting at the bus stop.
- Would you like a slice of *cake* / *bread* / *biscuit*?
- It's nice with a spoonful of *sugar* / *jam* / *crisps*.
- I bought two pairs of *socks* / *shirts* / *jeans*.
- Have you got a *piece* / *bunch* / *sheet* of paper I could borrow?

# Apologies, excuses and thanks

## A Apologies with common replies

We can apologise [say sorry] in different ways in different situations.

A: I'm (terribly/really) sorry – I've forgotten your book.

*Terribly/really* makes you sound 'more sorry'.

B: Never mind. That's OK.

A: I beg your pardon – I didn't see you there.

*I beg your pardon* is a more formal apology, often used if you walk into someone.

B: That's all right. (also That's OK.)

A: (I'm) sorry to disturb you.

We use this phrase when we interrupt / speak to someone who is busy working.

B: Don't worry. Come on in. I can finish this later.

A: (I'm) sorry to keep you waiting – I won't be long.

We use this phrase when someone is waiting for us. *I won't be long* = I will be with you very soon.

B: OK. Fine.

A: Excuse me, I won't be a minute.

We use this phrase when we have to leave a room or go somewhere.

B: OK. Fine.

A: I must apologise for the noise last night.

This is a more formal apology, and it is often used in business letters.

B: That's all right. I understand.

A: I'm (really) sorry I'm late.

B: Don't worry.

### Common mistakes

I'm sorry I'm late. (NOT I'm sorry for ~~be~~ late. OR I'm sorry ~~to~~ late.)

## B Excuses

We often give an explanation or excuse after an apology. An excuse is a *reason* for the apology, which may or may not be true. These are excuses students might give for being late for class.

I'm sorry I'm late for class ...

- There was a delay / hold-up on the underground. [when a train, plane, etc. leaves or arrives later than you expect]
- I was held up in traffic. [hold up – cause a delay and make someone late – is often used in the passive]
- My train was cancelled [the train company decided not to run the train], and I had to wait half an hour for the next one.
- I overslept. [slept longer than I planned or wanted to]

## C Thanks and replies

These are some common ways of thanking people, with typical replies.

A: Thanks (very much).

A: I've brought your books.

B: Not at all. (also That's OK.)

B: Oh, cheers. (*infml*)

A: No problem. (*infml*)

A: I'll post those letters for you.

B: Oh, thank you. That's very kind of you. [This is polite and slightly more formal.]



# Exercises

64.1 Find three more pairs of phrases that have a similar meaning.

~~thanks very much~~ I'm terribly sorry don't worry never mind  
I was held up ~~cheers~~ I beg your pardon there was a delay

.....  
.....

64.2 Complete the dialogues with one word. Contractions (e.g. *I'm*) count as one word.

- 1 A: I'm terribly..... sorry.  
B: That's OK.
- 2 A: Thanks very much.  
B: ..... at all.
- 3 A: Sorry to ..... you waiting. I won't be .....  
B: That's all .....
- 4 A: I'm sorry ..... late. The 7:30 train was ....., so I had to wait for the next one.  
B: That's OK. No .....
- 5 A: I gave your parents a lift to the station.  
B: Oh, thanks. That's very ..... of you.
- 6 A: I must ..... for missing the meeting yesterday afternoon.  
B: ..... mind. I'll ask Janice to tell you what happened.
- 7 A: I ..... your pardon. I thought the room was empty.  
B: That's OK.

64.3 What could you say in these situations? If it is an apology, give an explanation.

- 1 You walk into someone by accident and he/she almost falls over.  
I'm terribly sorry. OR I beg your pardon. I didn't see you.
- 2 You arrange to meet some friends in town at 9 am but you are twenty minutes late.  
.....
- 3 Your car has broken down. You're pushing it to the side of the road and a man offers to help.  
.....
- 4 You need to speak to your boss but she's working. What do you say when you enter her office?  
.....
- 5 You have to leave a meeting to take an important phone call. What do you say to the others?  
.....
- 6 You are on the phone but a customer is waiting to talk to you. What can you say to them?  
.....
- 7 You are late for an appointment because you had to wait half an hour in traffic.  
.....
- 8 Your company promised to send some information to a customer last week. You still haven't sent the information and you must now write to explain. Write the first sentence of your letter.  
.....

64.4

**Over to you**  
Answer the questions. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Are you ever late for class or work? If so, do you have to apologise to anyone? Do you normally give a reason why you are late? If so, what reasons are most common?
- 2 What other things have you apologised for recently? What did you say? Did you give an excuse?

# 65 Requests, permission and suggestions

## A Requests and replies

A: Could you pass the salt?

B: Sure. / No problem.

A: Could you possibly help me?

B: Yes, of course.

A: Dima, I wonder if you could help me?

B: Sure.

A: I was wondering if you could lend me some money until tomorrow.

B: No, I'm afraid I can't.  
[I'm sorry but I can't.]

### Language help

As the requests become bigger it is normal to use longer phrases which sound more polite.

## B Asking permission and replies

A: Could I possibly have a look at your magazine?

B: Yes, help yourself.

A: May/Could I open the window?

B: Sure, go ahead.

A: Do you mind if I watch TV?

B: No, go ahead.

### Language help

When we answer **go ahead** or **help yourself**, we are giving someone permission to do the thing they have asked.

## C Suggestions and replies

We could try that new restaurant.

How about going to a club?

What shall we do tonight?

I don't mind. You choose.

Let's go to the café in the square.

Why don't we go and see a film?

Do you fancy listening to some music?  
[do you want to; *informal*]

We can reply with different answers, from positive to negative.

Yeah, (that's a) great idea.  
That sounds good.

Yes, if you like.  
Yeah, I don't mind.

No, I don't fancy that.  
Mm, I'd rather do something else.  
[I would prefer to do something else]

# Exercises

## 65.1 Correct six more mistakes in the dialogue.

- A: ~~Do~~ you like to go out this evening? *Would*  
 B: I'm afraid but I haven't got any money.  
 A: That's OK. I'll pay. How about go to see a film?  
 B: No, I think I'd rather to stay in. I have to do some homework.  
 A: Why you don't do your homework this afternoon?  
 B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
 A: Well, we could to go tomorrow.  
 B: Yeah, it's a great idea.

## 65.2 Match 1–6 with a–f.

- |   |                                       |                                     |   |                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|-----------------------|
| 1 | Could you close the door?             | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a | a suggestion          |
| 2 | May I close the window?               | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b | a negative reply      |
| 3 | We could go to the cinema.            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c | a request             |
| 4 | Yeah, great idea.                     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d | asking for permission |
| 5 | I wonder if you could close the door? | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e | a positive reply      |
| 6 | I don't fancy that.                   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f | a polite request      |

## 65.3 Complete the dialogues with one word. Contractions (e.g. *don't*) count as one word.

- 1 A: What *would* ..... you like to do this weekend?  
 B: I don't ..... . You decide.
- 2 A: Could you ..... open that window? It's very hot in here.  
 B: Yes, of ..... .
- 3 A: I was ..... if you could give me a lift to Luke's this evening.  
 B: Sure, no ..... .
- 4 A: What do you ..... doing this evening?  
 B: I don't ..... . Any ideas?  
 A: Why ..... we go to the cinema? We haven't been for ages.  
 B: Yeah, that's a great ..... .
- 5 A: Do you ..... if I use your phone?  
 B: No, go ..... .
- 6 A: OK. Where ..... we go on Saturday?  
 B: How ..... going to the beach if the weather's nice?  
 A: Yeah. Or we ..... try that new sports centre just outside town.  
 B: Mmm. I think I'd ..... go to the beach.  
 A: Yes, OK, if you ..... .

## 65.4 Reply to the questions. Try to give a different answer each time.

- 1 Could I borrow your pen for a minute? *Yes, sure.* .....
- 2 Could you possibly post a letter for me? .....
- 3 I was wondering if you've got a suitcase you could lend me? .....
- 4 Do you mind if I take this chair? .....
- 5 I've got some tickets for a concert. Do you fancy going? .....
- 6 How about going to a football match at the weekend? .....
- 7 Why don't we meet this afternoon and practise our English? .....



# Opinions, agreeing and disagreeing

## A Asking someone for their opinion

What do you think of his new book / Tom's girlfriend? [asking about a specific thing or person]  
 What do you think about global warming / cosmetic surgery? [asking about a general topic]  
 How do you feel about working with the others?

## B Introducing your own opinion

Personally, I think Helena was probably right.  
 Personally, I feel that we should increase the price.  
 In my opinion [I think], we need to change the direction of the company.  
 My view/feeling is [my opinion is] that we need to wait a bit longer.

### Common mistakes

www.irLanguage.com

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Personally, I ~~don't think it's~~ a good idea. (NOT I think it's not a good idea.)  
 In my opinion, motorbikes are dangerous. (NOT ~~On~~ my opinion OR In my meaning)  
 In most situations, it is probably easier and more natural to use **personally**.

## C Giving the opinion of others

The newspaper says that his death was not an accident. (NOT ~~It's written~~ in the newspaper)  
 According to the paper [the paper says], the government didn't know about it.

## D Agreeing and disagreeing (with someone)

I totally agree (with you). [agree completely, 100%]  
 I partly agree (with you). [agree but not completely]  
 I agree (with you) to a certain extent. [partly agree]

### Common mistakes

I agree with you. (NOT ~~I'm~~ agree with you.)  
 Do you agree? (NOT ~~Are you~~ agree?)

In British English, it is common to agree with someone **before** giving a different opinion.

That's true, but I think ...

I see what you mean, [I understand what you are saying] but ...

I agree to some extent, but ...

I think that's a good point [idea or opinion], but ...

I take your point [I understand and partly agree with your opinion], but ...

## E Giving a strong opinion

I feel very strongly about military service. I think everyone should do it.

I think you're absolutely right/wrong. [100% correct/wrong]

I don't agree at all.  
[I completely disagree]

I disagree completely.  
[100% don't agree]



# Exercises

## 66.1 Complete the questions in different ways to ask people their opinion.

- 1 What do you think *about* ..... sending people to Mars?
- 2 ..... these shoes? Do you like them?
- 3 ..... having more responsibility?

## 66.2 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Did you think he was right in what he said?  
B: Not completely, but I *partly* ..... agreed with him.
- 2 A: What did you think ..... the film?  
B: Well, ..... I didn't like it.
- 3 A: Do you agree with her?  
B: Yes, to a certain .....
- 4 A: She feels very ..... about protecting the environment.  
B: Yes, I know, and I think she's absolutely .....
- 5 A: ....., I think all politicians tell lies.  
B: Sorry, but I ..... completely.
- 6 A: We can't send everyone to university.  
B: Yes, that's ....., but we should give everyone a chance to go.
- 7 A: My ..... is that we should make all chocolate and sweets more expensive, and then people couldn't afford to eat so many things that are bad for them.  
B: That's a good ....., but it seems unfair on people who don't eat too many sweet things.
- 8 A: I see what you ..... about spending more money, but can we afford it?  
B: Well, in my ..... we have no choice.

## 66.3 Rewrite the sentences using the words in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 I think you're right. AGREE *I agree with you* .....
- 2 I think the club needs new players. OPINION .....
- 3 I completely disagree with you. AT ALL .....
- 4 The newspaper says the fire was started on purpose. ACCORDING .....
- 5 I partly agree with her. EXTENT .....
- 6 I see what you mean, but I'm not sure I agree. POINT .....



## 66.4

### Over to you

Respond to the statements with your own opinion. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 I think most women are happy to stay at home and be a mother and housewife.  
.....
- 2 Personally I don't think the government should give so much money to people who don't work.  
.....
- 3 My feeling is that we should give more money to poor countries in other parts of the world.  
.....
- 4 I think we should make it more expensive to drive a car in order to reduce the number of cars.  
.....

## A Likes and dislikes

	agree	disagree
I love rock music. I'm really into dance music. [like it very much; <i>informal</i> ] I like a lot of pop music. 	So do I. / Me too. So am I. / Me too.  So do I. / Me too.	Really? I don't. Really? I'm not.  Do you? I hate it.
I quite like salsa and samba. I don't mind jazz. [it's OK]	So do I. / Me too. Yeah, it's OK.	Oh, I'm not very keen. Oh, I can't stand it.
I'm not very keen on folk music. I can't stand classical music. [dislike it very much; <i>informal</i> ] I hate opera. 	Neither am I. / Me neither. Neither can I. / Me neither.  So do I. / Me too.	Really? I love it. Really? I quite like it.

Language help [www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Many of these verbs can be followed by a noun or an *-ing* form, e.g. *I love driving, I like singing, I don't mind work, I dislike driving, I can't stand getting up early, I hate cold weather.*

## B Attitudes and interests

My attitude to a lot of things has changed over the years. [how you think or feel about something]  
I used to like chips. [I liked chips in the past but not now.]  
I used to play computer games, but now they don't interest me. [I don't find them interesting.]  
I'm very interested in modern architecture, but I used to think it was awful.  
I used to go swimming a lot, but now I don't go at all. [*at all* makes a negative stronger]  
Mark and I used to have the same interests [things we enjoy doing], but now it seems we have nothing in common. [have no interests that are similar; *opp* have a lot in common]

## Common mistakes

I'm interested in seeing that. (NOT I'm interest in seeing that; OR I'm interested to see that.)

It takes time to get used to [become familiar with] living in a different country.  
I didn't like my new glasses at first, but now I've got used to them.  
I found the winters very cold at first, but you get used to it.

## C Which do you, or would you, prefer?

A: Which do you prefer in general, tea or coffee? [like more]

B: Well, I prefer coffee to tea in the morning, but in the afternoon I usually drink tea.

A: Tonight, we can go to the cinema or the theatre. Which would you prefer?

B: I think I'd prefer to go to the cinema. (*syn* I'd rather)



# Exercises

## 67.1 Correct the mistakes in B's replies.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 A: I can drive.<br>B: So <del>do</del> I. <u>can</u> .....                   | 5 A: I don't like shopping.<br>B: Me too. ....                                   |
| 2 A: I love modern art.<br>B: Yes, so I do. ....                               | 6 A: Do you like football?<br>B: Yes, but I prefer rugby than football.<br>..... |
| 3 A: Do you like chocolate?<br>B: Yes, I like very much. ....                  | 7 A: Do you like this?<br>B: No, I'm not interest in music.<br>.....             |
| 4 A: Do you like it in England?<br>B: Yes, I'm getting used to live here. .... |  |

## 67.2 Complete each sentence with one word.

- My sister loves Robbie Williams, but I can't stand..... him.
- The two boys have nothing in ..... ; they're completely different.
- The others enjoyed the film, but I didn't like it at .....
- I love the cinema, but this particular film doesn't ..... me.
- Carole is really ..... modern art at the moment. Personally, I hate it.
- I ..... to love cheese, but I never eat it now.
- A: Would you like to go out? B: I'd ..... stay here, actually. Is that OK with you?
- I didn't like raw fish at first, but I'm ..... used to it now.

## 67.3 Agree with the statements using *so* or *neither* and the correct verb. Then agree using *Me too* or *Me neither*.

- |                               |                       |                      |
|-------------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|
| 1 I love this ice cream.      | <u>So do I.</u> ..... | <u>Me too.</u> ..... |
| 2 I like strawberries.        | .....                 | .....                |
| 3 I don't like cold tea.      | .....                 | .....                |
| 4 I can't work with music on. | .....                 | .....                |
| 5 I'm single.                 | .....                 | .....                |
| 6 I'm not married.            | .....                 | .....                |
| 7 I've got a cat.             | .....                 | .....                |

## 67.4 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- He likes salsa. INTO He's into salsa......
- I hate these new shoes. STAND .....  
.....
- She'd prefer to go home. RATHER .....  
.....
- I don't like James Bond films very much. KEEN .....  
.....
- I think the new building is alright. MIND .....  
.....
- I went riding a lot in the past, but not now. USED .....  
.....
- We have a lot of the same interests. COMMON .....  
.....
- I'm becoming familiar with this new computer. USED .....  
.....
- I don't feel the same way about work now. ATTITUDE .....  
.....

## 67.5

### Over to you

Complete the sentences. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- |                     |                            |
|---------------------|----------------------------|
| I really like ..... | I prefer ..... to .....    |
| I don't mind .....  | ..... doesn't interest me. |
| I can't stand ..... | I used to .....            |

# 68 Greetings, farewells and special expressions

## A Greetings\*

When we are introduced to a **stranger** [told the name of someone we have never met] in a formal situation, we usually shake hands and say *hello*, or perhaps *hello*, *nice to meet you*. In an informal situation, we usually just say *hello* or *hi*.

When we greet friends, there are no real rules in Britain. Men may kiss female friends [girls/women] on one cheek [side of the face], on both cheeks, or not at all. Women may kiss male friends and female friends once, twice, or not at all. We usually say things like this:

A: Hello. How are you? B: Fine, thanks. How about you?

A: Hi. How's it going? / How are things? (*infml*) B: Not (so) bad, thanks. And you?

\* saying hello

## B Farewells\*

To someone we have just met for the first time we can say *Goodbye*. *Nice to meet you*.

With friends we can say *bye*, *cheers* (*infml*), *take care* (*infml*), or *see you* (*soon/later/tomorrow*, etc.).

When we say goodbye to a school or work friend on Friday afternoon we usually say:

A: Have a nice weekend.

B: Yeah, same to you. (NOT same for you)

\* saying goodbye

## C Expressions for special situations



### Language help

www.irLanguage.com

We use **Thank goodness** when we are happy that something bad did not happen. A synonym is **Thank God** (*infml*), but there are some people who may not like the use of this expression. We can use *Goodness* on its own to express surprise, e.g. *Goodness, is it ten o'clock already?*

# Exercises

## 68.1 Find five more phrases.

good	take	excuse	bless	luck	you
thank	me	goodness	not	care	bad

..good.. luck.....  
 ..  
 ..

## 68.2 Complete the dialogues.

- A: How are you?  
B: Fine. How *about*..... you?
- A: How's it ..... ?  
B: Not ..... . And you?
- A: Have a nice weekend.  
B: Yeah, ..... you.
- A: Nobody was hurt in the accident.  
B: Oh, ..... for that.
- A: I'll see you tomorrow.  
B: Yeah, ..... care.
- A: I've just passed my exam.  
B: ..... !
- A: I'm fine, thanks.  
B: Good. And ..... Sarah?

## 68.3 What could you say in these situations?

- A friend says, 'Have a good weekend'. What do you reply? *Yeah, same to you.*.....
- You met a new business client for the first time fifteen minutes ago, and now you are leaving. What do you say? .....
- You are on a crowded bus. It is your stop and you want to get off. What do you say to other passengers as you move past them? .....
- A friend tells you they have just won some money. What do you say? .....
- A friend is going for a job interview this afternoon. What do you say? .....
- You are having a drink with friends. What do you say when you hold up your glasses to drink? .....
- Someone sneezes next to you. What do you say? .....

## 68.4 Complete the sentences.

- When you meet someone for the first time in a formal *situation*..... , what do you say?
- When you are ..... to someone in a formal situation, do you normally ..... hands?
- What do you do and say when you ..... friends?
- Do you usually kiss friends? If so, is it on one ..... or both ..... ?
- When you say goodbye to friends, do you use informal expressions like *Cheers*, or *Take* ..... ? If so, what are they?

## 68.5

### Over to you

Answer the questions in Exercise 68.4 about your country. If possible, ask someone from a different country the same questions.



# Prefixes: changing meaning

## A With adjectives

Prefixes, e.g. **un-**, **dis-**, **im-**, can be added to some adjectives to give the opposite meaning.

happy	unhappy	honest [tells the truth]	dishonest
possible	impossible	correct [right ✓]	incorrect
regular	irregular	legal [allowed by law]	illegal

Dan used all the milk but said he didn't; he's very dishonest.  
I got eight answers right, but two were **incorrect**.  
It's **illegal** in the UK to ride a motorbike without a helmet.

## B un-

Of the prefixes above, **un-** is the most common, and appears in a number of adjectives.

This chair is incredibly **uncomfortable**.

It was **unnecessary** for them to wait for us.

Xerxes – that's a very **unusual** name. [different, not common or ordinary]

I won the game; it was completely **unexpected**. [I didn't think I was going to win]

Marsha's hat is **unbelievable**. [surprising because it is either very good or very bad]

We tried to open the door, but we were **unable** to get in. [could not]

I need to do more exercise; I'm very **unfit**. [not healthy and not in good condition]

Carrick played well, and I thought he was **unlucky** to lose.

They're **unlikely** to get here before midday. [They probably won't get here before midday.]

The test was **unfair** because some of the students had more time to do it than others. [If something is *unfair*, it does not treat people equally.]

### Language help

Adding a negative prefix does not usually change the pronunciation; the stress stays the same. She was un'lucky. It's unbe'lievable. (NOT She was 'unlucky. It was 'unbelievable.)

## C With verbs

With some verbs, these prefixes can have particular meanings.

<b>dis-</b> [the opposite of something]	I disagree with the others. [don't agree / have the same opinion] The plane appeared in the sky, then it disappeared behind a cloud.
<b>un-</b> [the opposite of an action]	I couldn't <b>unlock</b> the door this morning. [open the door using a key; <i>opp lock</i> ] We had to get <b>undressed</b> in the cold. [take off our clothes; <i>opp get dressed</i> ] I <b>unpacked</b> the bags. [took everything out of the bags; <i>opp pack</i> ]
<b>over-</b> [too much]	The bank <b>overcharged</b> me. [asked me to pay too much money]
<b>mis-</b> [do something incorrectly]	I <b>misunderstood</b> what he said; I'm afraid my English isn't very good. I <b>misheard</b> her. I thought she said <i>Rita</i> , not <i>Brita</i> .
<b>re-</b> [again]	The teacher has asked me to <b>rewrite</b> my essay.

# Exercises

## 69.1 Write the opposite.

- |                    |                  |
|--------------------|------------------|
| 1 .....unhappy     | 7 .....agree     |
| 2 .....able        | 8 .....necessary |
| 3 .....correct     | 9 .....regular   |
| 4 .....usual       | 10 .....honest   |
| 5 .....possible    | 11 .....fair     |
| 6 .....comfortable | 12 .....lucky    |

## 69.2 Which sentence on the right logically follows each sentence on the left?

- |  |                                       |                                |
|--|---------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1 She arrived home.                    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> b | a She unpacked her suitcase.   |
| 2 Her essay was terrible.              | <input type="checkbox"/>              | b She unlocked the front door. |
| 3 She decided to go to bed.            | <input type="checkbox"/>              | c She has disappeared.         |
| 4 He called her name.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>              | d She had overcharged me.      |
| 5 She's not here now.                  | <input type="checkbox"/>              | e She had to rewrite it.       |
| 6 He thought he was right.             | <input type="checkbox"/>              | f She misheard it.             |
| 7 She got to the hotel.                | <input type="checkbox"/>              | g She disagreed.               |
| 8 After I paid, I looked at the price. | <input type="checkbox"/>              | h She got undressed.           |

## 69.3 Complete the dialogues so that B agrees with A using different words. You only need one word for each gap.

- A: Mireille is a strange name.  
B: Yes, very unusual.
- A: It's against the law, isn't it?  
B: Oh yes, it's .....
- A: You mean he took off all his clothes!  
B: Yes, he got completely .....
- A: He probably won't get back in time for the meeting.  
B: I agree. It's very .....
- A: A lot of the answers were wrong.  
B: Yes, I'm afraid they were nearly all .....
- A: He doesn't look in very good condition; he's a bit overweight.  
B: I know. He looks terribly .....
- A: Nobody thought this would happen.  
B: Yes, it was completely .....
- A: They never tell the truth.  
B: I know. They're both .....
- A: His business always seems to lose money, and it's not his fault.  
B: I know. He's very .....
- A: Ann always gives more attention to Sarah than she does to Lucas.  
B: Yes, it's very ..... on poor Lucas.

## 69.4 These words all appear in other units of the book. Do you know how to form the opposites?

- |               |                   |             |       |
|---------------|-------------------|-------------|-------|
| pleasant      | <u>unpleasant</u> | fashionable | ..... |
| kind          | .....             | reliable    | ..... |
| patient (adj) | .....             | friendly    | ..... |
| suitable      | .....             | tidy        | ..... |
| like (v)      | .....             | ability     | ..... |
| do up         | .....             | sociable    | ..... |

## A

## Verb + noun suffix

Suffixes are used at the ends of words; they often tell you if a word is a noun, a verb, an adjective or an adverb. Two suffixes which form nouns from verbs are **-ion** and **-ment**.

verb	noun
<b>invent</b> [produce or design something completely new]	<b>invention</b>
<b>discuss</b> [talk about something seriously]	<b>discussion</b>
<b>translate</b> [change from one language to another]	<b>translation</b>
<b>relax</b> [rest, and feel calm and comfortable]	<b>relaxation</b>
<b>improve</b> [get better]	<b>improvement</b>
<b>govern</b> [control the affairs of a city or country]	<b>government</b>
<b>manage</b> [direct or control a business]	<b>management</b>
<b>develop</b> [grow or change and become more advanced]	<b>development</b>

His latest **invention** is a new board game.  
**Relaxation** will help you to sleep better.  
 We had a **discussion** about politics.

The **management** has to change.  
 I need money for more **development**.  
 We need an **improvement** in the weather.

## B

## Adjective + noun suffix

The suffixes **-ness** and **-ity** often form nouns from adjectives.

www.irLanguage.com

adjective	noun
<b>weak</b> ( <i>opp</i> strong)	<b>weakness</b>
<b>happy</b>	<b>happiness</b>
<b>ill</b> [sick, not well]	<b>illness</b>
<b>fit</b> [in good condition, usually because of exercise]	<b>fitness</b>
<b>stupid</b> ( <i>opp</i> intelligent, clever)	<b>stupidity</b>
<b>popular</b> [liked by a lot of people]	<b>popularity</b>
<b>similar</b> [almost the same; <i>opp</i> different]	<b>similarity</b>
<b>able</b>	<b>ability</b> ( <i>opp</i> inability)

What is his main **weakness** as a manager?  
 Snowboarding is growing in **popularity**.  
 I'm frustrated by my **inability** to use computers.

Fortunately it wasn't a serious **illness**.  
 There is a **similarity** between them.  
 Her **happiness** is all that matters to me.

## C

**-er, -or** and **-ist**

These suffixes can be added to nouns or verbs. They often describe people and jobs.

<b>-er</b>	<b>-or</b>	<b>-ist</b>
ballet dancer pop singer professional footballer	company director translator film actor	artist, e.g. Picasso economist scientist

## Language help

Adding a suffix to a verb, adjective or noun may change the position of the main stress, e.g. re'lax – relax'a'tion, 'stupid – stu'pidity, eco'nomics – e'conomist.  
 (The ' symbol is before the syllable with the main stress.)



# Exercises

**70.1** Complete the tables and mark the stress on each word. (Stress is marked on the pronunciation of a word in a dictionary.) The last two in each column are not on the opposite page, but do you know or can you guess the noun formed from them?

verb	noun	adjective	noun
dis'cuss	dis'cussion	stupid	
improve		happy	
invent		similar	
relax		popular	
hesitate		sad	
arrange		active	

**70.2** Write down the names of the people who do these things as a job.

- 1 sing opera music *opera singers*
- 2 act in films
- 3 important managers in a company
- 4 change words from one language into another
- 5 play football
- 6 dance in ballets
- 7 paint pictures
- 8 work in science

**70.3** Complete the text using words from the box with the correct suffix and spelling. One word also needs a prefix.

*weak*   improve   govern   economics   able   manage   discuss

“In his speech last night, the prime minister said that the present <sup>1</sup> *weakness* of the economy was caused by the <sup>2</sup> *bad* of the last <sup>3</sup> and their <sup>4</sup> to give the right kind of help for industry. He said he was now involved in detailed <sup>5</sup> with ministers, bankers and <sup>6</sup> about a range of different financial measures, and he hoped the people would be able to see a big <sup>7</sup> in the economy by the end of the year.”

**70.4** Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: He hasn't been well at all, has he?  
B: No, it's quite a serious *illness*.
- 2 A: Are they almost the same?  
B: Yes, the ..... is amazing.
- 3 A: Has anyone made anything like this before?  
B: No, it's a brand-new .....
- 4 A: Is her new novel going to be published in other languages?  
B: Yes, someone is working on a ..... right now.
- 5 A: Does your daughter enjoy drawing too?  
B: Yes, she's a very good .....
- 6 A: Jung gets tired after he's been playing for about ten minutes.  
B: I know. If he wants to be in the team, he'll have to improve his .....
- 7 A: Do you think the organisation can still grow?  
B: Yes, I think there is an opportunity for further .....

Common suffixes that form adjectives include: **-able** (comfortable), **-al** (musical), **-y** (cloudy), **-ous** (famous) and **-ive** (attractive).

## A

**-al**

Adjectives ending **-al** are usually formed from nouns, and often mean 'relating to the noun', e.g. a **musical** instrument (from music), a **political** issue (from politics), an **electrical** fault (related to electricity), a **personal** opinion (the opinion of one person).

مرجع زبان ایرانیان



*Shichi-Go-San* (meaning 7, 5, 3) is an **annual** ceremony in Japan for three- and seven-year-old girls, and three- and five-year-old boys. It is on November 15, but it is not a **national**<sup>1</sup> holiday, so people often have it on the nearest weekend. Seven, five and three are seen as important years in the growth of a child, and the numbers also have **cultural significance**<sup>2</sup> because odd numbers (1, 3, 5, 7, 9, etc.) are lucky in Japan. This is one of the special days when the older boys and girls are allowed to wear **traditional**<sup>3</sup> clothes: a kimono for girls and hakama trousers for boys. Now it is quite **normal**<sup>4</sup> for children to wear western-style clothes at this ceremony. The children visit a shrine and are then given special sweets called *Chitose-Ame* by their parents.

<sup>1</sup> a holiday for the whole country<sup>2</sup> they are important in Japanese culture<sup>3</sup> in a style that has continued for many years<sup>4</sup> usual

## B

**-able /able/**

This suffix forms adjectives from nouns *and* verbs, and the prefix **un-** often forms the opposite:

an **enjoyable** party [something that you enjoyed]

a **comfortable** chair (*opp* uncomfortable)

a **suitable** word or phrase [right/correct for a particular situation; *opp* unsuitable]

a **reliable** service; reliable information [able to be trusted or believed; *opp* unreliable]

**fashionable** clothes [popular now with many people; *opp* unfashionable]

a **reasonable** decision or price [fair; not a bad decision or price; *opp* unreasonable]

a **sociable** person [enjoys being with people; *opp* unsociable]

Sometimes the opposite form is the more common adjective:

an **unforgettable** experience [something that cannot be forgotten]

an **unbelievable** story [something that is very surprising and very difficult to believe]

## C

**-ful and -less**

The suffix **-ful** often means 'full of' or 'having the quality of the noun', e.g. a **colourful** room has a lot of colour in it; a **helpful** person gives a lot of help; a **peaceful** place is calm and quiet.

The opposite meaning is sometimes formed by adding the suffix **-less** to the noun.

a **useful** machine [having a lot of uses; *opp* a useless machine]

a **painful** injection [giving pain and being unpleasant; *opp* a painless injection]

a **careful** driver [drives with care and attention; *opp* a careless driver]

**Common mistakes**

www.irLanguage.com

The suffix is **-ful** (NOT ~~full~~), so **useful** and **careful** (NOT ~~usefull~~ or ~~carefull~~).

# Exercises

## 71.1 Correct the spelling mistakes. Be careful: one word is correct.

- |                                    |                     |                      |
|------------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1 enjoiable <u>enjoyable</u> ..... | 4 peacefull .....   | 7 unforgetable ..... |
| 2 carful .....                     | 5 confortable ..... | 8 reasonable .....   |
| 3 relyable .....                   | 6 anual .....       | 9 unbeleivable ..... |

## 71.2 Match the words on the left with the words on the right.

- |                 |                                     |                 |
|-----------------|-------------------------------------|-----------------|
| 1 a national    | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a injection     |
| 2 a useful      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b mistake       |
| 3 a painful     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c price         |
| 4 fashionable   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d holiday       |
| 5 a careless    | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e man           |
| 6 an electrical | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f bit of advice |
| 7 an unsociable | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g clothes       |
| 8 a reasonable  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | h fault         |

## 71.3 Write an adjective formed from these nouns or verbs. 11–15 are not on the opposite page, but you can find them in the index if you don't know them.

- |                                      |                     |                  |
|--------------------------------------|---------------------|------------------|
| 1 tradition <u>traditional</u> ..... | 6 fame .....        | 11 wind .....    |
| 2 attract .....                      | 7 electricity ..... | 12 danger .....  |
| 3 person .....                       | 8 politics .....    | 13 create .....  |
| 4 cloud .....                        | 9 enjoy .....       | 14 emotion ..... |
| 5 colour .....                       | 10 nation .....     | 15 fog .....     |

## 71.4 Tick (✓) the words which form opposites with the suffix *-less*.

- |           |                              |         |           |
|-----------|------------------------------|---------|-----------|
| wonderful | No ( <del>wonderless</del> ) | useful  | beautiful |
| careful   |                              | painful | peaceful  |

## 71.5 Complete the sentences.

- You must be very careful..... when you drive in wet weather.
- She told us an ..... story about a dog that could speak.
- The tourist information office was very ....., and told us everything we needed to know.
- The festival is an ..... event, held on the first Monday in September.
- It was very ..... when I hit my leg against the corner of that table.
- This bag is ..... ; it's too small for me to put anything in it.
- We've never had any problems with our TV in ten years; it's been very .....
- Most people agreed with it, so I think it was a ..... decision.
- This is just my ..... opinion; others may not agree.
- Travelling round China and the Far East was an ..... experience.
- Children perform ..... dances at the ceremony, as they have done for hundreds of years.
- Do you think this dress is ..... for a wedding?

## 71.6 Choose three adjectives from the opposite page which could describe these people or things.

- a village: attractive....., famous....., peaceful.....
- a jacket: ....., ....., .....
- an event: ....., ....., .....
- a person you know: ....., ....., .....
- an opinion: ....., ....., .....
- a room: ....., ....., .....



## A

## Nouns and verbs

Many words in English function as a noun and a verb with the same form, and often a similar meaning. When you use these words as nouns, you often need to know which verbs to use with them.



She kissed me.  
She gave me a kiss.



He said 'Hi' and smiled at me.  
He said 'Hi' with a big smile.



I dreamt about Ethan.  
I had a dream about Ethan.



He washed the car.  
He gave the car a wash.



I queued for the bus.  
I waited/stood in a queue for the bus.



I braked.  
I put on the brakes.

I'll ring them / give them a ring. [phone someone]

We often chat / have a chat. [have a friendly conversation; *informal*]

If you don't know, guess / have a guess. [give an answer without knowing the facts]

Have you replied to his email yet? Have you sent him a reply yet?

It may help to diet / go on a diet. [eat less in order to lose weight]

Can doctors cure this? / Have doctors found a cure for this? OR Is there a cure for this?

[make someone with an illness healthy again]

## B

## A rescue attempt

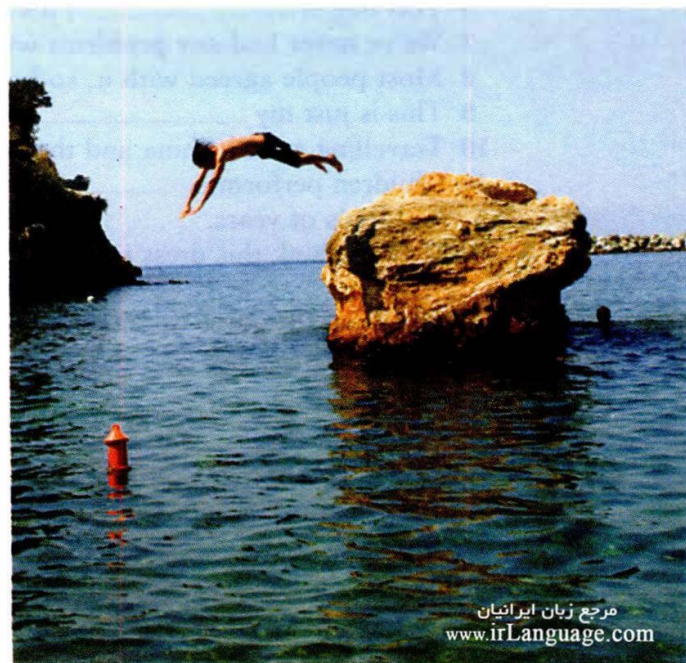
“I regret<sup>1</sup> going to Three Cliffs Bay. I promised<sup>2</sup> my mother not to go there, but I'm not very good at keeping promises. I was swimming near the rocks with friends and I dived off one of the rocks. I thought it was a good dive, but I hit another rock as I entered the water. I hit my head and couldn't move. One of my friends attempted<sup>3</sup> to rescue<sup>4</sup> me, but couldn't reach me; someone else made an attempt to swim out to me. In the end, two of the boys pulled me to safety. I had to go to hospital, but I was lucky: there were several unsuccessful rescue attempts that summer.”

<sup>1</sup> v + *-ing* feel sadness for something you did in the past (*n* regret)

<sup>2</sup> v + *inf* say that you will certainly do something

<sup>3</sup> v + *inf* try to do something

<sup>4</sup> v + *obj* make someone safe when they have been in a dangerous situation; *syn* save



# Exercises

## 72.1 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 They attempted *saving* / (to *save*) the boy.
- 2 I regret *leave* / *leaving* home.
- 3 We had to wait *in* / *on* a queue.
- 4 I'd like to go *for* / *on* a diet.
- 5 She promised *helping* / *to help* me.
- 6 He gave *her a big kiss* / *a big kiss for her*.
- 7 I dreamt *about* / *for* you.
- 8 If you don't know the answer, *do* / *have* a guess.

## 72.2 Replace the underlined words with a verb that keeps a similar meaning in the sentences. Make any other changes that are necessary.

- |   |                                |
|---|--------------------------------|
| 1 Can you <u>phone</u> him?                                     | <u>Can you ring him?</u> ..... |
| 2 We <u>talked</u> for a bit.                                   | .....                          |
| 3 The policeman <u>saved</u> her from the burning car.          | .....                          |
| 4 I <u>tried</u> to help James with his homework.               | .....                          |
| 5 Have you <u>answered</u> the letter?                          | .....                          |
| 6 I <u>am sorry</u> that I left home.                           | .....                          |
| 7 I <u>said</u> that I would <u>definitely</u> go to the party. | .....                          |
| 8 They told us to <u>wait</u> in a queue if we wanted tickets.  | .....                          |

## 72.3 Rewrite the sentences using the underlined verbs as nouns.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 I'll <u>ring</u> him this evening.            | I'll <u>give him a ring</u> this evening..... |
| 2 I'll <u>diet</u> if necessary.                | I'll .....                                    |
| 3 Did you know, or did you <u>guess</u> ?       | Did you know, or did you ..... ?              |
| 4 He always <u>smiles</u> at me when I see him. | He always greets me .....                     |
| 5 I <u>dreamt</u> about my mother.              | I .....                                       |
| 6 We can't <u>cure</u> this disease.            | We .....                                      |
| 7 I <u>braked</u> but it was too late.          | I .....                                       |
| 8 She <u>washed</u> the kitchen windows.        | She .....                                     |
| 9 They <u>attempted</u> to help her.            | They .....                                    |
| 10 We sat down and <u>chatted</u> .             | We sat down and .....                         |

## 72.4 Sometimes the same word can be a verb and noun but with a different meaning. Read the pairs of sentences. Do the verb and noun have a similar meaning, or are they different in meaning? Note: these words are not on the opposite page.

- 1 a We had a long wait for the bus. *Similar*  
b We waited a long time for the bus.
- 2 a There's a book on the table.  
b I had to book a table.
- 3 a I took a break at work.  
b I broke my arm at work.
- 4 a How much did the holiday cost?  
b What was the cost of the holiday?
- 5 a I dropped the milk.  
b I had a drop of milk.
- 6 a Someone behind me screamed.  
b I heard a loud scream.



## A

## Formation

We form compound nouns by putting two words together (or three) to create a new idea. Compound nouns are very common in English.

Ice hockey is a game of hockey played on ice.

Public transport is transport that can be used by the public.

A campsite is a site for camping. [a place used for a special purpose]

A babysitter is someone who looks after young children when their parents go out.

Income tax is money you pay to the government out of your income. [the total amount of money you receive every year from your work and other places]

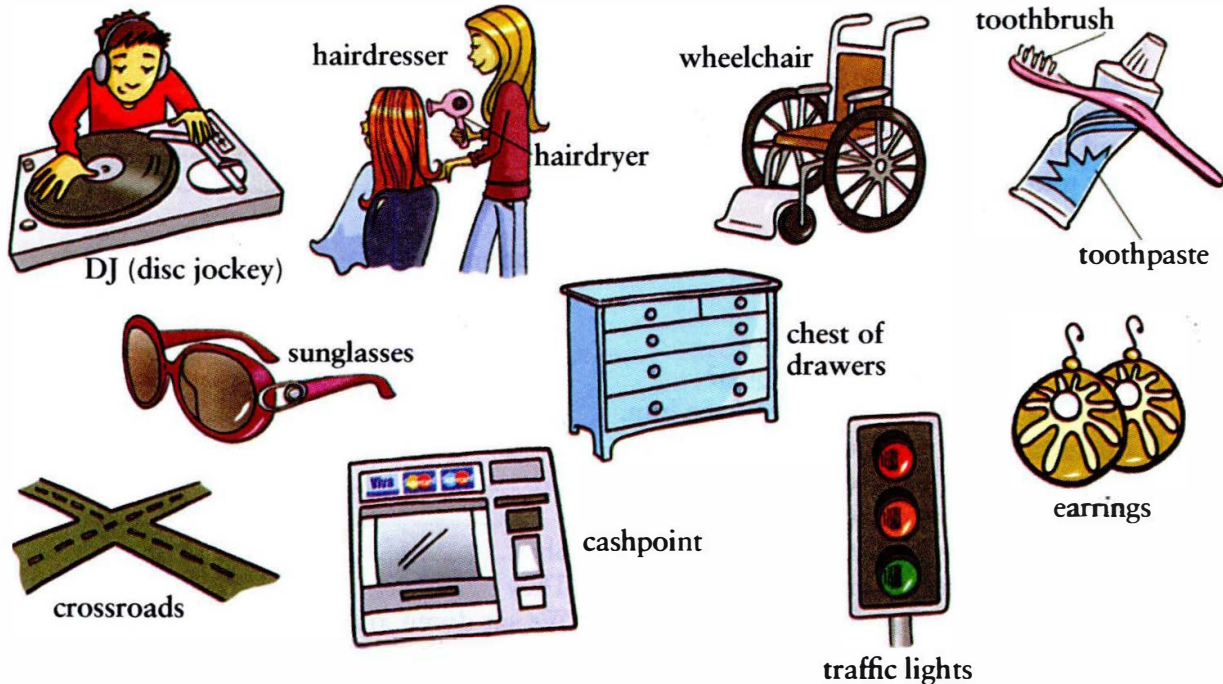
Your mother tongue is the first language you learn as a child.

A travel agent is someone whose job is to make travel arrangements for you.

A film-maker is someone who makes films for the cinema or television.

A full stop is a punctuation mark at the end of a sentence.

A haircut is the act of cutting someone's hair, e.g. *That boy needs a haircut.*



## B

## One word or two?

Some compound nouns are written as one word, e.g. wheelchair; a few are written with a hyphen, e.g. T-shirt; many are written as two words, e.g. credit card, bus stop. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

## C

## Pronunciation

The main stress is usually on the first part, e.g. 'haircut or 'income tax, but sometimes it is on the second part, e.g. public 'transport, full 'stop. Use a dictionary to check if necessary.

## D

## Forming new compounds

One part of a compound often forms the basis for a number of compound nouns.

airport e.g. Heathrow

airline e.g. Lufthansa, KLM

aircraft e.g. Airbus A380

bus driver

bus stop

bus station

ID card (identity card)

credit card

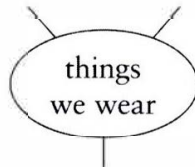
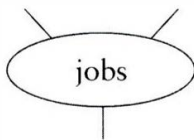
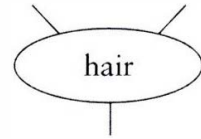
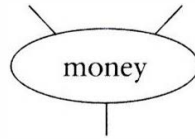
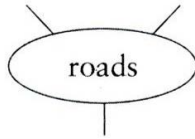
birthday card



# Exercises

73.1 Complete the circles with compound nouns from the opposite page.

public  
transport



73.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I got some money from the cashpoint.
- 2 I booked our holiday through a .....
- 3 We stayed on a very nice ....., but unfortunately our tent wasn't really big enough.
- 4 He can't walk at all now, so he has to use a ..... to move around.
- 5 I sent her a ..... but she never received it; it must have got lost in the post.
- 6 Liz and Mark wanted to go out, but they couldn't find a ..... for the children.
- 7 When I'm driving I always wear ..... if it's very bright and sunny.
- 8 Most people have to pay ..... on their salary; the more you earn, the more you pay.
- 9 I washed my hair, then discovered that the ..... wasn't working.

73.3 Which words are being defined?

- 1 A substance that you use to clean your teeth. toothpaste
- 2 A piece of furniture for keeping clothes in. ....
- 3 Someone who plays music on the radio or at discos. ....
- 4 A card with your name, photograph and information to prove who you are. ....
- 5 The first language you learn as a child. ....
- 6 A game played on ice using sticks. ....
- 7 A punctuation mark at the end of a sentence. ....
- 8 A card you use to pay for things. ....

73.4 Make new compounds using one part of the compounds below. Answers for 1-6 are on the opposite page, answers for 7-12 are in other parts of the book.

- |               |                |                   |       |
|---------------|----------------|-------------------|-------|
| 1 airport     | <u>airline</u> | 7 living room     | ..... |
| 2 full stop   | .....          | 8 brother-in-law  | ..... |
| 3 hairdresser | .....          | 9 sunglasses      | ..... |
| 4 credit card | .....          | 10 traffic lights | ..... |
| 5 toothpaste  | .....          | 11 wheelchair     | ..... |
| 6 bus driver  | .....          | 12 film-maker     | ..... |

### A What do we mean by word partners?

If you want to use a word naturally, you often need to know other words that are commonly used with it. These are called word partners or collocations, and they can be different from language to language. For example:

I **spent time** in Paris. (NOT I ~~passed~~ time in Paris.) I **missed the bus**. (NOT I ~~lost~~ the bus.)  
We have children. (NOT We ~~get~~ children.)

I **made a mistake**. (NOT I ~~did~~ a mistake.)

It was a **serious injury**. (also a serious illness)

It's **quite likely** that we'll stay here.

[we'll probably stay here]

It **depends on** my parents. (NOT It depends ~~of~~ my parents. See Unit 77.)

#### Language help

More **word partners** can be found in the *Cambridge Learner's Dictionary* for intermediate learners and the *Cambridge Advanced Learner's Dictionary*.

### B Verbs and nouns

There are many verbs and nouns that are often used together.

Pavel **told me a joke** but I can't remember it. [told me a funny story]

I need to **lose weight**. [become less heavy; *opp* put on weight]

The doctor told my father that he should **go on a diet**. [eat less in order to lose weight]

It's very difficult to **predict the future**. [say what will happen in the future]

We won the game 2–1, and my brother scored the **first goal**<sup>1</sup>.

My neighbour's **alarm** went **off**<sup>2</sup> in the middle of the night.

They fell in love and got married. Now Emily is expecting a **baby**<sup>3</sup>.

1



2



3



### C Adjectives and nouns

Many adjectives and nouns are often used together. These are all examples where the meaning is 'big' or 'a lot', but where we usually use a particular adjective.

We've got a **large number** of students/tourists this year. (*opp* a **limited/small** number)

I will need a **large amount** of money.

There's a **wide choice** of food available. (*opp* a **limited/narrow** choice)

Claude has a **wide vocabulary** in English. (*opp* a **limited vocabulary**)

It's only a toy gun but it makes a **very loud noise**.

Her family is of **great importance** to her.

We went to a party last night and it was **great fun**. [very enjoyable; we enjoyed it a lot]

There was **heavy traffic** on the motorway going out of town. (*opp* **light traffic**)

### D Adverbs and adjectives

The adverbs in the first three sentences mean *very*, the adverbs in the last sentence mean *fully/completely*. In each case, the adverbs and adjectives are common word partners.

I'm **terribly** sorry I'm late.

She's **well** aware of the problem. [She knows all about the problem.]

It's **vitaly** important that we get the right person for the job.

Lorna is **fast** asleep, but the other two are still wide awake.

# Exercises

## 74.1 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 Why does she ~~do~~ so many mistakes? make.....
- 2 My sister got a baby last month. ....
- 3 I'm sorry I'm late; I lost the bus. ....
- 4 There was an accident and Tommy has a grave head injury. ....
- 5 I don't know if I can come – it depends of the weather. ....
- 6 We passed three days in Amsterdam. ....
- 7 I wouldn't like to try and say the future. ....
- 8 My sister is waiting for a baby next month. ....
- 9 Axel said me a very funny joke. ....
- 10 She gave us a big amount of money. ....

## 74.2 Complete the text.

My mum went to see the doctor, and he told her to go on a <sup>1</sup> diet..... I think she knows that she needs to <sup>2</sup>..... weight, but she's not happy about giving up chocolate. Anyway, I told her it's <sup>3</sup>..... important that she keeps to the diet, because if she <sup>4</sup>..... any more weight, it's quite <sup>5</sup>..... that she'll end up with a more <sup>6</sup>..... illness. Fortunately, I think she's <sup>7</sup>..... aware of that.

## 74.3 Replace **big** or **little** with a more suitable adjective.

- 1 You won't need a **big** amount of money. large.....
- 2 Why are they making such a **big** noise? .....
- 3 I've got quite a **big** vocabulary in French. ....
- 4 There is only a **little** choice of things we can buy. ....
- 5 We had a very **big** number of tourists this year. ....
- 6 I think the event had **big** importance for her. ....
- 7 Lola only has a **little** vocabulary in English. ....

## 74.4 Complete the sentences and dialogues.

- 1 A: Why were they late? B: They got stuck in heavy..... traffic.
- 2 When I went into her bedroom, she was ..... asleep.
- 3 A: Did you enjoy last night? B: Yes, it was ..... fun.
- 4 I met Sasha in town. She told me she's ..... a baby in June. Isn't that fantastic news?
- 5 A: We won 1–0. B: Who ..... the goal?
- 6 Leif ..... me a joke, but I'm afraid I didn't understand it.
- 7 A: Are the boys asleep? B: No, they're still ..... awake.
- 8 My neighbour's burglar alarm ..... at 2 o'clock this morning and woke me up.
- 9 A: Why is she staying in Paris? B: She ..... in love with a French guy.
- 10 I'm ..... sorry, but I've lost your book – I'll buy you a new one.

## 74.5

### Over to you

Look at the verbs and nouns in section B, and the adjectives and nouns in section C on the opposite page. Are they the same in your language? If possible, compare with someone else who speaks your language.



## A What are fixed phrases?

There are many groups of words which you need to learn as complete phrases, because they often have a meaning which is different from the words on their own. Many of these are called idioms.

They arrived out of the **blue**. [I didn't know they were coming; it was unexpected]

Does the name Merchant **ring a bell**? [sound familiar]

You'll have to **make up your mind** soon. [make a decision]

Some fixed phrases are easier to understand, but the same idea may be expressed in a different way in your language.

I think we'll have to **get rid of** some of this furniture.

[remove it, e.g. sell it, throw it away, give it away, etc.]

I'm afraid I can't talk to you now; I'm (just) **about to** leave. [I am going to leave very soon]

I don't know what Martin said, but Natalie **burst into tears**. [suddenly started crying] She was very upset.

Everyone was there apart from Yasmine.

[not including Yasmine; *syn* except for]



## B Time phrases

He's leaving **in four days' time**. [four days from now; also in three weeks'/six months'/two years' time, etc.]

I got here **the week before last**. [during the week/month, etc. before the previous one]

The course is **fine so far**. [up until now]

I rang our local doctor and fortunately she was able to come **at once**. [now, immediately; *syns* right away / straight away]

He's so busy at work; he comes home late **night after night**. [every night; also day after day, etc.]

## C Pairs of words

A number of fixed phrases consist of two words, usually joined by **and**, and sometimes **or**.

I go to the theatre **now and again**. [occasionally; *syns* now and then]

Andy had **one or two** [a few] suggestions.

I've got a house in the country, and I like to go there whenever possible for a bit of **peace and quiet**. [a calm situation without noise]

I've been **up and down** the street, but I can't find their house. [first in one direction, then the other]

I've been to Paris **once or twice**. [a few times]

I'll finish this report **sooner or later**. [I don't know when, but I'll finish it.]

## D Introducing advice, opinions, etc.

Many fixed phrases are used to introduce advice, an opinion, an example, etc.

**If I were you** [in your situation], I'd accept the job they offered you.

**In general** [usually, or in most situations; *syn* on the whole] the summers are quite warm in this part of the country.

There were lots of questions. **For instance** [for example], how much will it cost?

I'm sure you'll have a great holiday. **By the way**, what time does the train leave? (used to introduce a new subject to the conversation)

**To be honest**, I didn't like her boyfriend very much. (used to say what you really think)

# Exercises

75.1 Using all the words in the square, find eight more phrases.

<del>ON</del>	DAY	SOONER	<del>AND</del>	RIGHT
SO	AND	NOW	TWO	LATER
UP	OR	<del>OFF</del>	PEACE	AFTER
FAR	AND	ONE	AWAY	AGAIN
AND	DAY	QUIET	OR	DOWN

on and off .....  
 .....  
 .....

75.2 Complete the sentences with one word, then underline the full fixed phrase in each sentence.

- 1 She's been working on that essay night after night.
- 2 I'm arranging everything for next week. By the ....., is your sister coming this evening?
- 3 My parents always turn up at my flat out of the .....
- 4 Some people enjoyed the book, but to be ....., I thought it was boring.
- 5 I'd like to get ..... of these CDs because I don't listen to them any more.
- 6 In ....., people are much happier when they have jobs that they enjoy.
- 7 I don't know what to do at the moment but I'll have to make up my ..... soon.
- 8 It's a flexible ticket. For ....., you can use it during the week or at weekends.
- 9 Can I ring you later? I'm just ..... to have lunch.
- 10 If I ..... you, I'd get a new dictionary.

75.3 Complete the fixed phrase in each dialogue.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 A: Do you go there much?<br>B: Now <u>and again</u> .   | 7 A: Have you been there often?<br>B: Once .....                                     |
| 2 A: Have you had any ideas?<br>B: Yeah. One .....        | 8 A: Do you need me there now?<br>B: Yes. Could you come at ..... ?                  |
| 3 A: Was she very upset?<br>B: Yes. She burst .....       | 9 A: When are you going back?<br>B: In two weeks' .....                              |
| 4 A: You arrived ten days ago?<br>B: Yeah, the week ..... | 10 A: How's the course?<br>B: It's good so .....                                     |
| 5 A: Should I accept the job?<br>B: Yes, I would if ..... | 11 A: I spoke to Chris Myler. Do you know him?<br>B: No, the name doesn't ring ..... |
| 6 A: Will they get here?<br>B: Yeah, sooner .....         | 12 A: Have you done all the housework?<br>B: Yes, apart ..... the washing.           |

75.4 Here are more idioms. Can you underline one in each sentence, and guess what it means?

- 1 I've been in the job a few days, but I already feel at home. feel comfortable and relaxed
- 2 I've just bought these shoes and they cost a fortune. ....
- 3 Could you keep an eye on my bag for me? .....
- 4 The answer's on the tip of my tongue. ....
- 5 We had a night on the town last night. ....
- 6 I could do with a new computer; mine's quite old now. ....

## A Common responses

A large number of fixed phrases are used as common responses in everyday conversation.

A: What time did he get here?

B: I've no idea. [I don't know]

A: Are you going tonight?

B: That depends. [used to say you are not sure because other things affect your answer; also It depends]

A: Shall we go out tonight?

B: Yeah, why not. [OK]

A: Did you like the film?

B: Not really. [used to say *no* but not strongly]

A: I'm going to Sweden next week.

B: Really. What for? [why?]

A: Can I borrow your car?

B: No way. [that's impossible; *informal*; *syn* no chance]

A: They're coming tonight, aren't they?

B: I suppose so. [used to say *yes* but not strongly]

A: Jason has grown a beard.

B: I know. I couldn't believe my eyes! [I was very surprised when I saw it]

A: We have to work tonight.

B: You must be joking.

A: Eli got top marks.

B: I don't believe it! [used to express great surprise]

## Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

We can use **you must be joking** (*syns* you're joking/kidding) when someone has just said something that is a surprise. It may be an unpleasant surprise (as above), or a nice surprise, e.g.

A: My father said he would pay for all of us to go on holiday.

B: You're kidding. Fantastic!

## B In conversation

Notice how fixed phrases can form an important part of an everyday conversation.

A: I had to have a word with Jiri and Milan today.

[speak to them without others listening]

B: Oh yeah? Are they causing trouble again?

A: Well, you know, [used to fill a pause in conversation] they just keep talking to each other, and they don't pay attention [listen] – that sort of thing.

B: Why don't you make them sit in different places?

A: I tried that, but they still talked to each other.

B: Well, in that case [because of the situation described], you'll have to move one of them.

A: Maybe, but I'd feel bad about that [be unhappy about]. They're quite nice boys, you know, they just can't help it. [can't control some actions or behaviour]

B: Sure ... but you can't let that kind of thing continue.

A: No, you're right. But I've given them a final warning today, so let's wait and see what happens. [wait to discover what will happen]

B: OK. But what if they don't improve? [what will you do if they don't improve?]

A: I think it'll be OK.

B: Well, if you change your mind [change your decision], come and see me again, and I'll arrange for one of them to be moved to another class.



## Language help

www.irLanguage.com

We use **sort/kind** in several common phrases in informal speech.

(and) that sort/kind of thing [examples of that type]

e.g. I grow onions and carrots – that sort/kind of thing.

sort/kind of [approximately/more or less] e.g. Her new top is sort of blue; I thought he was kind of strange.



# Exercises

76.1 Put the responses in the most suitable column below.

~~no way~~ not really I suppose so why not  
 you're kidding that depends I don't believe it

positive	negative	not sure <i>or</i> either
	no way	

76.2 Choose the correct word. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 I need to have a word *speak* with Catalina.
- 2 I don't know what they plan to do; we'll have to wait and *see / watch*.
- 3 He usually wears jeans, trainers, and that *sort / kind* of thing.
- 4 Little children shout and scream all the time; they can't *help / leave* it.
- 5 A: I went to Cambridge last week. B: Really? *What / Why* for?
- 6 The trouble with Mark is that he doesn't *pay / give* attention.
- 7 A: Are you working tonight? B: *It / That* depends.

76.3 Complete the dialogues with a suitable fixed phrase.

- 1 A: Did you hear that Daniel's getting married?  
 B: Yeah. I don't believe it!
- 2 A: Sofia doesn't listen.  
 B: No. She never .....
- 3 A: Did you speak to Nathalie?  
 B: Yes, I .....
- 4 A: Dad wasn't happy about forgetting my birthday.  
 B: No, he felt .....
- 5 A: Do you know what time he'll be here?  
 B: No, I'm afraid I've .....
- 6 A: Are you still planning to sell the flat?  
 B: No, I've ..... I'm going to keep it now.

76.4 Where could you add the phrases in the box to the dialogues below?

~~you know~~ I couldn't believe my eyes kind of in that case  
 that sort of thing you must be joking why not

- 1 A: What did you say to him?  
 B: Well, it was quite difficult. *you know*
- 2 A: What colour was it?  
 B: Blue.
- 3 A: He's not coming this evening, so you won't be able to ask him.  
 B: Well, I'll phone him and ask him.
- 4 A: Jerry says we'll have to walk all the way to the campsite.  
 B: That's ten miles!
- 5 A: Do you want to get a takeaway?  
 B: Yeah.
- 6 A: What do they sell?  
 B: Oh, burgers, pizzas, ...
- 7 A: Did you see Chloe wearing those high-heeled shoes?  
 B: Yes.

### A Verb + preposition

Pay special attention to prepositions that are different in your language.

Paul doesn't like the manager's decision and I agree **with** him. [have the same opinion as]

Don't worry **about** your exam. [be nervous about]

His teachers were satisfied **with** his progress. [pleased with]

Many people spend a lot of money **on** clothes.

I'm **thinking of** going to China. [it's my plan to go] (used in the continuous form)

This land **belongs to** the company. [it is the company's land]

I translated the letter **into** French. [changed from one language into another]

She complained **to** the manager **about** the food. [said she wasn't happy/satisfied with]

I can't concentrate **on** [think about] my work when the radio is playing.

We can rely **on** this photocopier. [trust it; it will not go wrong]

I may go but it depends **on** the weather. [used to say you are not sure about something]

### Language help

www.irLanguage.com

**Depend (on)** has other meanings:

*Martha depends on her son for money.* [she needs his money]

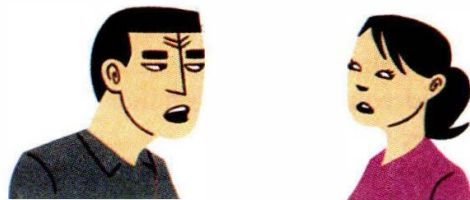
*We can depend on the others for support.* [we can trust the others to support us]

Remember: it **depends on** something or someone (NOT it depends of something or someone)

### B Prepositions that change the meaning



She shouted **to** me. [spoke in a loud voice to be heard]



He shouted **at** me. [spoke in a loud voice because he was angry]



He threw the ball **to** me. [for me to catch it]



He threw the ball **at** me. [in order to hit me]

### C Adjective + preposition

I've never been very good **at** maths. (●pp bad at)

She's afraid **of** flying. [frightened of]

The neighbours are **fond of** the children. [like]

She's similar **to** her sister [the same as her in some ways], but very different from her brother.

He's very interested **in** photography.

I think she's aware **of** the problem. [knows about]

I'm tired **of** people telling me what to do. [bored or a bit angry about]

Katya is mad **about** Brad Pitt. [likes him very much; *informal*]

We're short **of** coffee at the moment. [we don't have much]

There's something wrong **with** this TV. [the TV is not working correctly]

# Exercises

**77.1** Match the sentence beginnings on the left with the best endings on the right.

- |                        |                                     |   |
|------------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 He's tired           | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a me, but it missed.                        |
| 2 She wasn't aware     | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b to the manager.                           |
| 3 He threw the pen to  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c of working at weekends.                   |
| 4 She complained       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d his friend on the other side of the lake. |
| 5 He shouted at        | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e me, but I dropped it.                     |
| 6 He shouted to        | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f with them.                                |
| 7 He threw the book at | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g us to get out of his garden.              |
| 8 I don't agree        | <input type="checkbox"/>            | h of her mistakes.                          |

**77.2** Complete the questions with the correct preposition, then write an answer for each one.

- |  |                    |
|--|--------------------|
| 1 A: What is she worried <u>about</u> .....            | B: Her exams ..... |
| 2 A: What subjects is she good .....                   | B: .....           |
| 3 A: Who does this belong .....                        | B: .....           |
| 4 A: What does he spend all his money .....            | B: .....           |
| 5 A: What are you afraid .....                         | B: .....           |
| 6 A: What kind of films are you interested .....       | B: .....           |
| 7 A: What does the decision depend .....               | B: .....           |
| 8 A: I know he's angry, but who's he shouting .....    | B: .....           |
| 9 A: Who can we rely .....                             | B: .....           |
| 10 A: What language is the book being translated ..... | B: .....           |

**77.3** Complete the dialogues.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1 A: Are you going to the exhibition?<br>B: Yes, I'm very <u>interested</u> in art. | 6 A: Did you like the course?<br>B: No, I wasn't very satisfied ..... it.       |
| 2 A: Is she ..... to her sister?<br>B: No, they're completely different.            | 7 A: What's the matter?<br>B: I can't ..... on this with the TV on.             |
| 3 A: What did she ..... about?<br>B: She wasn't happy with the food.                | 8 A: It's a big problem.<br>B: Yes, but we're ..... of that.                    |
| 4 A: Angel is very good-looking.<br>B: That's why I'm ..... about him!              | 9 A: We're a bit ..... of milk.<br>B: OK. I'll buy some when I go out.          |
| 5 A: What's ..... with the radio?<br>B: I don't know, but it's not working.         | 10 A: Do Max's children have jobs?<br>B: No, they still ..... on their parents. |

**77.4** Do you know which preposition follows the words below? They are all in this book. If you don't know, use the index to help you. A good dictionary will tell you if a verb or adjective is usually followed by a special preposition.

- |              |                   |                 |
|--------------|-------------------|-----------------|
| keen .....   | succeed .....     | apply .....     |
| suffer ..... | get married ..... | apologise ..... |

**77.5**

## Over to you

Complete the sentences about yourself. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 I'm not very good .....
- 2 I've always been interested .....
- 3 I'm not very fond .....
- 4 I spend most of my money .....
- 5 For my next holiday, I'm thinking .....



# 78 Prepositional phrases

## A *By, on or in + noun*

I took his pen **by mistake**. [I thought it was my pen]  
These shoes are made **by hand**. [not using a machine]  
I met them **by chance**. [it wasn't planned; it was luck]



He broke the plate **by accident**. [he did not want or plan to do it]



He broke the plate **on purpose**. [he wanted to do it; it was his intention]

My boss is **on the phone** at the moment. [using the phone]  
The workers are **on strike**. [they refuse to work because of a problem over pay, hours, etc.]  
The books were **on display** in the window. [in the window for people to look at]  
Part of the building was **on fire**. [burning]  
Most of the passengers are now **on board**. [on the train, boat, plane, etc.]  
Why are they always **in a hurry**? [needing to do something or go somewhere very quickly]  
I explained everything **in detail**. [including all the important information]  
She won't make that mistake again **in future**.  
The poor little girl was **in tears**. [crying]

## B *Phrases easily confused*

Sometimes two prepositions can be used with the same noun, but the meaning is different.

Lessons begin at 8.30 and the students are usually here **on time**. [at 8.30]

If we hurry, we'll be there **in time**. [before the time we need to be there]

We were tired of waiting, so **in the end** we went home. [finally, after a lot of time or thought]

**At the end** of the book they get married. [in the last part]

To be successful **in business** it's important to get on well with people. [working as businesspeople]

They're both in Germany **on business**. [they are there for work, not a holiday]

I'm afraid this book's a bit **out-of-date**. [old and not useful, or not correct in its information]

I try to keep **up-to-date** with all the changes. [knowing all the most recent ideas and information]

I'll see you **in a moment**. [not now, but very soon; *syn* in a minute]

I can't speak to you at the moment. [now; *syn* right now]

### Common mistakes

I'm busy **at the moment**. (NOT I'm busy ~~in this moment~~.)

# Exercises

## 78.1 Put the nouns into the correct columns.

<del>board</del>	hand	accident	display	detail
fire	future	mistake	tears	strike

on	in	by
board		

## 78.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- I'm afraid I deleted your email *on / in / (by)* accident.
- Did she hit him *on / by / in* purpose?
- I just saw them *with / by / on* chance.
- Most of these files are *out-of- / out-from- / out-for-* date.
- My wife is away *in / on / by* business at the moment.
- I'm afraid I'm busy *on / in / at* the moment.
- I've got to go; I'm *in / on / at* a hurry.
- I won't go there again *on / in / at* future.

## 78.3 Complete the missing noun in these prepositional phrases.

- I saw smoke coming out of the window, and I realised the house was on *fire*.....
- Nobody is at the factory. The workers are all on .....
- These chocolates are expensive because they are all made by .....
- I'm just going to the shop but I'll be back in a .....
- I'm sure she broke that vase on ..... ; she never liked it.
- I'm sorry I can't stop to talk now – I'm in a .....
- She never thanked me for the present, so I won't buy her another one in .....
- You can't trust things you read on the Internet; a lot of the information there is out-of- .....
- I told them everything they wanted to know. I explained it all in .....
- I went to the exhibition, and some of Katya's paintings were on .....
- The manager can't speak to you at the ..... ; I'm afraid she's on the .....
- It was a terrible journey but we got there in the .....

## 78.4 Replace the underlined word(s) with a prepositional phrase.

- The meeting was planned for 11 am and we got there at 11 am. *on time*.....
- Did you get to the cinema before the film started? .....
- Most of the factory is burning. .....
- I had great difficulty finding the camera I wanted, so finally I bought one on the Internet.  
.....
- He gets killed in the last scene of the film. ....
- I'm afraid I'm very busy right now. .....
- I saw her yesterday but we didn't plan to meet. .....
- I'm writing an email, but I'll be with you very soon. .....
- Most of these books are old and the information is wrong. .....
- I explained the system with all the important information. .....

## A

## Formation

A phrasal verb is a verb + adverb or preposition, and sometimes a verb + adverb *and* preposition.

He **fell over** [fell to the ground] and hurt his knee.

I'll try to **find out** [learn/discover] the quickest way to get there.

He didn't like his coat, so he **gave it away**. [gave it to someone for no money]

If you don't understand the meaning, **look it up**. [find the meaning in a book/dictionary]

Who's going to **sort out** the problem? [deal with it successfully; solve it]

He doesn't get **on with** [have a good relationship with] his parents. (verb + adv. + prep.)

## B

## Meaning

The adverb or preposition does not always change the meaning of the verb, and is not always used.

I didn't **wake (up)** until 7 o'clock.

She's **saving (up)** for a new computer.

**Hurry (up)** or we'll be late.

I went to **lie (down)** on the bed.

Sometimes an adverb adds a particular meaning to the verb. For example, **back** can mean *return*.

I bought this jacket yesterday, but I'm going to **take it back** to the shop; it's too small.

You can look at the books, but remember to **put them back** on the shelf.

They liked Greece so much they want to **go back** next year.

Often, the adverb or preposition changes the meaning of the verb: *give up* doesn't mean the same as *give*, and *carry on* doesn't mean the same as *carry*.

My wife has decided to **give up** [stop] smoking.

We'll take a short break and then **carry on** [continue] with the meeting.

The shops are going to **put up** [increase] the price of bread.

When the hotel gets busy, we have to **take on** [employ] more staff.

## C

## Multiple meanings

Many phrasal verbs have more than one meaning.

**go away**

I was busy, so I told him to **go away**. [leave]

We try to **go away** in August. [go on holiday]

**Pick something / someone up**

I **picked up** most of the rubbish. [lifted it from the floor]

I'm going to **pick Jane up** at the station. [collect someone, usually in a car]

**Put something on**

Could you **put the light on**? [make a piece of equipment work by pressing a switch; *syn* switch sth on]

I **put on** my best suit. [put clothes on your body]





# Exercises

## 79.1 Choose the correct adverb or preposition to complete the sentence.

- |   |        |             |        |
|---|--------|-------------|--------|
| 1 I can't see. Could you put the light .....            | a in   | <b>b on</b> | c out  |
| 2 If he doesn't want it, he can give it .....           | a out  | b away      | c up   |
| 3 Have they sorted it .....                             | a out  | b over      | c up   |
| 4 It was broken, so I had to take it .....              | a over | b on        | c back |
| 5 I went to the airport to pick her .....               | a up   | b down      | c over |
| 6 What time did you wake .....                          | a to   | b up        | c for  |
| 7 I get married next year. I need to start saving ..... | a out  | b on        | c up   |
| 8 Could you switch the TV .....                         | a down | b on        | c in   |

## 79.2 Replace the underlined word(s) with a phrasal verb that keeps a similar meaning.

- We never discovered what it means. *found out*
- I'd like to return next year.
- We collected Kelly from the station.
- We'll have to increase the price this year.
- I've decided to stop eating chocolate.
- Is Hana going to continue with her English course?
- I told them to leave.
- I have a good relationship with my parents.
- We are planning to employ ten new drivers next year.

## 79.3 Look at the dictionary entry for *go off* and match the meanings with the sentences below.

- When the light goes off, the machine has finished. *3*
- My alarm clock went off early this morning.
- I think this meat has gone off.
- The bomb went off without any warning.
- Faye went off early; she had to meet a friend.

**1 [LEAVE]** to leave a place and go somewhere else *She's gone off to the pub with Tony.* **2 [FOOD] UK informal** If food goes off it is not good to eat anymore because it is too old. **3 [STOP]** If a light or machine goes off, it stops working. *The heating goes off at 10 o'clock.* **4 [EXPLODE]** If a bomb or gun goes off, it explodes or fires. **5 [MAKE NOISE]** If something that makes a noise goes off, it suddenly starts making a noise. *His car alarm goes off every time it rains.*

## 79.4 Complete the dialogues.

- A: Can you afford that bike?  
B: No, I'll have to *save up* for it.
- A: Is there still a problem?  
B: Don't worry. I'll ..... it .....
- A: Can we look at some books?  
B: Yes, but ..... them ..... afterwards.
- A: Did you feel unwell?  
B: Yes, I had to ..... on the bed.
- A: What's the matter?  
B: I ..... and cut my knee.
- A: I don't know what this means.  
B: Well, ..... it ..... in a dictionary.
- A: Does he look smart?  
B: Yes. He's ..... his suit.
- A: ..... or we'll be late.  
B: OK, I'm coming.

### A Phrasal verbs with no object

Some phrasal verbs don't have an object. We cannot put other words between the parts of the verb.

When does your train get in? [arrive]

Hold on [wait a moment], I just need to get my coat.

The car broke down on my way to work. [stopped working]

I'll call for them at 8 o'clock. [go to collect them]

We set off [started the journey] about 7.30.

### B Phrasal verbs with an object

Many phrasal verbs need an object. We can usually put the object in different positions.

Put on your shoes.

Turn on the TV.

Take off your coat.

Put your shoes on.

Turn the TV on.

Take your coat off.

These are separable phrasal verbs, but if the object is a long phrase, it usually goes at the end, e.g. I **turned off the lights in the living room**. If the object is a pronoun, it must go in the middle, e.g. Turn **it** off.

#### Common mistakes

Put them on (NOT Put on them.); Take it off. (NOT Take off it.)

There are some phrasal verbs where the object must come after the phrasal verb.

I will look after **the children** for you. [take care of them]

How did the two men break into **the shop**? [enter the shop using force, e.g. breaking a window]

### C In dictionaries

Dictionaries usually show the grammar of a phrasal verb like this:

No object

**hang around** (also UK hang about) to spend time somewhere, usually without doing very much: *There's nowhere for teenagers to go, so they just hang around on street corners.*

Separable

**hand sth out** to give something to all the people in a group: *A girl was handing out leaflets at the station.*

Not separable (the object must come after the phrasal verb)

**get over sth** to begin to feel better after being unhappy or ill: *It took her months to get over the shock of Richard leaving.*

### D Style

Phrasal verbs are commonly used in spoken and written English. Many phrasal verbs are quite informal, and sometimes there is a single word with the same meaning as a phrasal verb, which sounds more formal. We use this word instead of the phrasal verb in more formal situations.

leave sb/sth out [not include sb/sth; *syn* omit], e.g. He made a list of people but left me out.

make sth up [create sth from your imagination; *syn* invent], e.g. We had to make up a story.

put sth off [put sth back to a later date; *syn* postpone], e.g. They put the game off till Friday.

turn sth/sb down [refuse an offer or request; *syn* reject], e.g. I offered her a job but she turned it down.

# Exercises

## 80.1 Correct any mistakes with word order in the sentences. Be careful: some are correct.

- 1 She asked me to hand ~~out them~~. hand them out
- 2 I've got some boots but I'll put on them later.
- 3 Could you turn the light on?
- 4 My boots were tight and I couldn't take off them.
- 5 We set off very early this morning.
- 6 Why did they turn down it?
- 7 The boys were hanging the station around.

## 80.2 Replace the underlined word with a phrasal verb that makes the sentence more informal.

- 1 Could you wait a minute, please? hold on.....
- 2 As so many people are ill, I've had to postpone the meeting till next week. ....
- 3 The teacher told us to invent a story to go with the picture in our books. ....
- 4 They omitted a number of the names from my list. ....
- 5 I don't know why he rejected my offer of help. ....
- 6 The train should arrive by ten o'clock. ....

## 80.3 Write a sentence to describe what is happening or what has happened in the pictures.



1 He's putting on his jacket.



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

## 80.4 Complete the phrasal verbs.

- 1 I'm not stopping, so I won't take off..... my coat.
- 2 We didn't think Mike was good enough, so we left him .....
- 3 He told me he was 25, but I don't believe him. I think he's making that .....
- 4 We'll get there by seven if we set ..... now.
- 5 I'll call ..... you a bit later. I should be at your house by 7 o'clock.
- 6 They offered him the job but he turned it .....

## 80.5 Complete these sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 It was cold so I put on my gloves/coat/scarf.....
- 2 Monica is still getting over .....
- 3 I'm not very good at making up .....
- 4 She asked me to turn on .....
- 5 Two men tried to break into .....
- 6 She's going out, so I said I'd look after .....



## A Things we *make*, *do* and *take*

### Common mistakes

We use all three of these common verbs with particular nouns. These word partners (collocations) are often different in other languages, so look at them carefully.

I've made a mistake.	I'm afraid I haven't done my homework.
She took a photo of me this morning.	I haven't done the housework yet.
They made a big effort to finish the work.	The children are making too much noise.
Sometimes two different verbs are possible.	
I'm just going to take/have a shower.	I'm doing/taking a computer course next month.
Take/Have a look at these pictures.	I don't do/take much exercise.
We must make/take a decision.	

## B Make

Make can mean 'to cause something to happen or cause a particular state'.

I like Boris – he makes me laugh.

It made them angry when Karen refused to help with the washing-up.

Make can also mean 'to force someone to do something'.

My parents made me do my homework when I was a child.

The police made us wait outside the main gates.

If you make friends with someone, you get to know them and like them.

I made friends with a couple of guys from Canada when I was on holiday.

If you make up your mind, you decide something.

He's made up his mind to leave work at the end of next month.

## C Do

We use do to describe a general action when we don't know what it is, or there's no noun.

What shall we do this afternoon?

Don't just stand there, do something.

If you do your hair/make-up, you make it look nice.

I'll just do my hair, then we can go out.

If you do your best, you try as hard as possible.

I'm not a good student, but I always do my best.

## D Take

Take can mean to:

- remove something from a place/person, e.g. I took the key out of my pocket.
- remove something without permission, e.g. Someone has taken my pen.
- accept something, e.g. Did he take the job they offered him? Do they take credit cards there?
- write something down, e.g. I took notes during the lesson. The man took my name and address.
- wear a particular size in clothes, e.g. I take size 43 shoes.

If you take it/things easy, you relax and don't do very much.

I'll take things easy today.

If you take a break, you stop work and rest for a short period.

Let's take a ten-minute break.

# Exercises

81.1 Choose the correct verb(s). Sometimes both are correct.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1 Did he <b>do</b> / <u>make</u> many mistakes?          | 5 Could you <b>take</b> / <b>have</b> a look at this letter? |
| 2 I couldn't <b>do</b> / <b>make</b> the homework.       | 6 How many photos did they <b>make</b> / <b>take</b> ?       |
| 3 We must <b>take</b> / <b>make</b> a decision soon.     | 7 I don't often <b>make</b> / <b>do</b> the housework.       |
| 4 I want to <b>do</b> / <b>make</b> a course in English. | 8 They <b>did</b> / <b>made</b> a lot of noise at the party. |

81.2 What are the people doing in the pictures?



1 She's taking a photo.



3 .....



5 .....



2 .....



4 .....



6 .....

81.3 Replace the underlined word or phrase with a phrase including the verb in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1 I <u>clean the flat</u> at the weekend. DO                  | ..... I <u>do the housework at the weekend</u> . |
| 2 They <u>forced us to go</u> . MAKE                          | .....  |
| 3 I'm <u>trying as hard as possible</u> . DO                  | .....  |
| 4 OK, let's <u>stop work and relax</u> for a bit. TAKE        | .....  |
| 5 He is definitely <u>trying</u> . MAKE                       | .....  |
| 6 When are they going to <u>decide</u> ? MAKE                 | .....  |
| 7 I'm going to <u>relax and do nothing</u> this weekend. TAKE | .....  |

81.4 Complete the sentences.

- Someone took..... my coat. It was here a minute ago and now it's gone.
- I can't go to the next lesson. Could you ..... notes for me?
- We ..... friends with Yuki when we were in the same class last year.
- I've ..... nothing today.
- If they offered him a job with more money, why didn't he ..... it?
- Could you take a ..... at my essay? I think there are lots of mistakes in it.
- When he shouted out the wrong answer, it ..... him look stupid.
- What size do you ..... ?
- I'm putting on weight because I don't ..... enough exercise.
- I've ..... up my mind. I'm going to go to Thailand for my holiday.

81.5

## Over to you

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- What things make you happy, make you sad, and make you angry?
- What things do your parents, or your boss, or your teachers make you do (or made you do in the past)?

A *Give*

We can use *give* when someone or something causes a certain effect.

All that noise has **given me** a headache.

The walk this morning **gave me** an appetite. [made me hungry]

Listening to Wai Sin has **given me** an idea.

We often use *give* with different nouns to express an action.

He **gave me** some advice. [advised me]

Marie **gave us** a shock when she shouted like that. [shocked us]

I had to **give a speech** at the wedding. [talk formally to a group of people; also give a lecture]

I'll **give her a ring**. [ring/phone her]

I had lots of work to do, but fortunately Ollie **gave me a hand**. [helped me]



She gave me a hug.



He gave the car a push.

B *Keep*

*Keep* can mean to stay or cause someone to stay in a particular state or condition.

**Keep right**. [stay on the right side]

She asked us to **keep quiet**.

This coat will **keep you warm**.

Going to the gym **keeps me fit**.

*Keep (on) doing something* means to repeat doing something, and often it is something you don't want to do or happen.

I **keep losing** my glasses.

I **keep getting** backache.

She **keeps on interrupting** me. [talks to me / disturbs me when I am doing something]

If you **keep in touch**, you continue to communicate with someone, especially by phone or email.

I met Asha on holiday and we've **kept in touch** ever since.

If you **keep a secret**, you don't tell other people something that you know.

Tom told me not to tell anyone about his new job, but I'm not very good at **keeping a secret**.

If you **keep something up**, you continue doing something at a high level.

You're working hard and your English is improving. That's good – **keep it up**.

C *Miss*

If you **miss** a person, you feel sad because that person is not there.

When I went to work in Hungary, I really **missed my girlfriend**.

If you **miss** what someone says, you don't hear it.

I'm sorry, I **missed that**. What did you say?

If you **miss a chance/opportunity**, you don't use an opportunity to do something.

Cathy's been chosen for the team, but now she's injured, she might **miss her chance** to play.

If you **miss something**, you manage to avoid it or not experience it.

I left home early in order to **miss the rush hour**.



# Exercises

## 82.1 Match each verb with three phrases on the right.

give	<u>a speech</u> .....	in touch
	.....	<del>a speech</del>
	.....	an opportunity
miss	.....	on doing something
	.....	someone a hug
	.....	a person
keep	.....	someone a hand
	.....	what someone says
	.....	a secret

## 82.2 Complete the sentences with a suitable adjective or *-ing* form.

- I never drink coffee at night; it keeps me awake.....
- This umbrella should keep you .....
- I don't know why she keeps ..... – it wasn't a very funny story.
- If you do lots of exercise, it'll keep you .....
- It's really stupid, but I keep ..... to lock the doors and windows when I go out.
- They're making a lot of noise in there. Could you tell them to keep ..... ?
- I know his name is Stuart, but I keep ..... it's Stephen.
- I keep ..... up early in the morning because it's so light in my bedroom.

## 82.3 Complete the dialogues using a verb + noun. Don't repeat the underlined phrases.

- A: He's sad without Gina.  
B: I know. He misses her.....
- A: Did you phone her?  
B: Yes, I ..... her a ..... last night.
- A: He didn't put his arms round her, did he?  
B: Yes. He ..... her a big .....
- A: Have you stayed in contact with your old school friends all this time?  
B: Yes, I've tried to ..... in ..... as much as possible.
- A: Could anyone help me with this?  
B: Yeah, I'll ..... you a .....
- A: It's his own fault. He had a chance to go and he didn't take it.  
B: I know. He ..... his .....
- A: I expect you're hungry after all that work.  
B: Yes, it's ..... me an .....

## 82.4 Complete the sentences with the correct verb and a word from the box.

~~shock~~ fun headaches secret push up dog idea rush hour

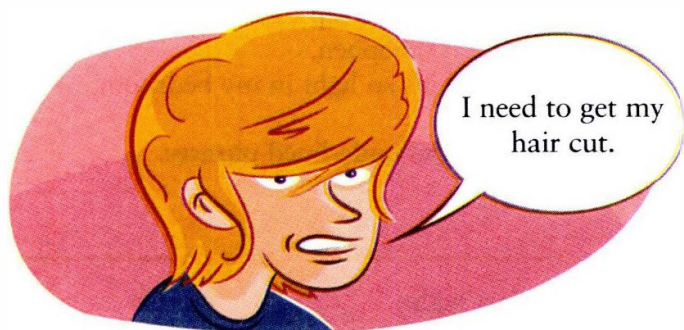
- She gave..... me a shock..... when she broke that window.
- If we leave the party early, we'll ..... all the .....
- The guys are working really hard, but I don't know if they can ..... it .....
- I couldn't get the car started, but fortunately someone ..... me a .....
- We left before seven because we wanted to ..... the .....
- She doesn't know what the problem is, but she ..... getting .....
- I saw a fascinating programme on TV, and that's what ..... me the .....
- When I go on holiday alone, I really ..... my .....
- I didn't say anything to Annie about the wedding because she can't ..... a .....

## A

## Uses

Get is an informal word and is very common in spoken English. It can have many different meanings.

OBTAIN	I got a ticket from my brother.	I need to get some help.
RECEIVE	I got a CD for my birthday.	Did you get my email?
BUY	Where did you get that watch?	I went to get a paper.
ARRIVE	What time did you get here?	I'll phone when I get home.
BECOME	It gets dark very early in winter.	My hands are getting cold.
FETCH	↔ Could you (go and) get my glasses from the kitchen for me?	
ANSWER the door/phone	A: Is that the phone?	B: Yes, I'll get it.



DO a task, or arrange for someone to do it for you, using get + past participle

I'll never get this essay finished; it's too difficult.  
I need to get my hair cut.  
I got my watch repaired today.

## B

## Phrases

You can **get in touch with** me via email. [make contact by email, phone or letter]  
A bedtime story helps children **get to sleep**. [start sleeping]  
The salsa classes are a chance for us to **get together**. [meet and spend time together]  
I'm sorry I **got** the number **wrong**. [said or wrote something that was not correct]  
My cold is **getting worse**. [becoming more unpleasant; *opp* getting better]  
I'd like to **get rid of** my old CDs. [throw them away, give them away, or sell them]  
I **got to know** lots of Americans when I stayed in San Francisco. [met and became friends with]

## C

## Phrasal verbs

He stopped the car and I **got out**. [left the car; also leave a building]  
I gave her £25, but I'll get it **back** tomorrow. [have it returned to me]  
The door was locked so we couldn't **get in**. [enter a place, especially when it is difficult]  
Our train should **get in** around midnight. [arrive]  
What time did you **get up** this morning? [get out of bed]

# Exercises

## 83.1 Write a synonym for *get* in each of these sentences.

- 1 I usually get about five emails a day. *receive*.....
- 2 Where can I get something to eat round here? .....
- 3 I'm just going to get some paper from the office. I'll be back in a minute. ....
- 4 What time did they get here last night? .....
- 5 He got very angry when I told him what you did with his CDs. ....
- 6 I couldn't get a room; all the hotels were full. ....
- 7 The phone's ringing. Could you get it for me? .....
- 8 Molly sent me a card but I never got it. ....

## 83.2 Complete the dialogues using *getting* + a suitable adjective. Add other words if necessary.

- 1 A: It's *getting cold in here*.....  
B: Yes, it is. I'll turn on the heating.
- 2 A: I'm .....
- B: Me too. Let's have something to eat.
- 3 A: I'm .....
- B: Yes, me too. I'll open the window.
- 4 A: It's .....
- B: Yes, it is. I'll put the lights on.
- 5 A: It's .....
- B: Yes, it is. I think I'll go to bed.
- 6 A: My English is .....
- B: No, it isn't – it's much better now.

## 83.3 Rewrite the sentences using a phrase or phrasal verb with *get*. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 Will the books be returned to you?  
Will you *get the books back*?
- 2 We must meet up and have a meal.  
We must .....
- 3 How do you meet people and make friends in this country?  
How do you .....
- 4 I must contact the travel company.  
I must .....
- 5 I'd like to throw away these old magazines.  
I'd like to .....
- 6 The train won't arrive before 10 o'clock.  
The train won't .....
- 7 The doors were locked; we couldn't leave.  
The doors were locked; we couldn't .....
- 8 I was awake for hours last night.  
I couldn't .....

## 83.4 Continue these statements in a suitable way.

- 1 The window is broken. We *need to get it repaired*.....
- 2 My hair is getting long. I .....
- 3 This essay is taking me hours. I .....
- 4 My watch isn't working. I .....
- 5 Lola has still got my CDs. I .....

## 83.5 Write down examples of *get* that you see or hear, and try to group your sentences according to the different meanings. This will help you to understand how this important word is used in English.



# Go: meanings and expressions

## A Different meanings of go

- When we leave a place in order to do an activity, especially for enjoyment, we often express it with go + -ing or go (out) for a + noun.  
We could go shopping/sightseeing/swimming/clubbing [to a nightclub] tomorrow.  
Why don't we go (out) for a walk/drive/drink/meal/picnic at lunchtime?
- Go can also describe a changing state (usually to a bad one) with certain adjectives.  
My dad's going grey [his hair is becoming grey] and I'm going bald. [losing my hair]  
My grandmother is going deaf. [deaf = cannot hear]  
Our 12-year-old dog is going blind. [blind = cannot see]  
He'll go mad if you wear his jacket. [become very angry; *informal*]
- We use go when we want to ask/say if a road or form of transport takes you somewhere.  
Does this bus go to the National Gallery?  
I think this road goes through the village.
- Go can also mean 'disappear'.  
When I looked in the drawer, my watch had gone. [it was there before, but not now]
- Go and get means fetch. [go to a place and bring something back with you]  
You stay here, and I'll go and get the bags from the car.



going bald

## B Phrasal verbs and expressions

A: What's going on in here? [happening]

B: I don't know. I touched this switch and the lights went out. [stopped working]

A: Shall we wait for George or go on to the theatre? [continue or move to another place/thing]

B: Er, I'm not sure of the way; let's wait for George.

A: How's the business?

B: Well, it was going well [successful; *opp* going badly] up until the summer, but since then a few things have gone wrong [there have been problems], and we've lost a few customers.

A: Are you going away this year? [going on holiday]

B: Yes. We had a lovely time in Turkey last year, so we've decided to go back in June. [return]

A: I think I'll have the chicken. How about you?

B: I'm going for the roast beef. [choosing]

A: How's it going? [How are you? *informal*]

B: Not bad. And you?



# Exercises

**84.1** Complete the sentences with an **-ing** noun, e.g. riding, or **(out) for a + noun**, e.g. (out) for a walk.

- 1 I went shopping..... this morning and bought some new clothes.
- 2 It was a lovely day, so we made some sandwiches and decided to go .....
- 3 Why don't we go ..... in that nice new café near the square?
- 4 I wanted to go ..... because it was my first time in Rome.
- 5 My brother has just got a new sports car. We could go ..... at the weekend.
- 6 The pool is at the end of the road, so we often go .....
- 7 I'm just going to take the dog .....
- 8 We went ..... last night and didn't get home until three this morning.
- 9 It was my father's birthday, so we decided to go .....

**84.2** Replace the underlined words with a different word or phrase. Keep a similar meaning.

- 1 He went mad when he saw me. got angry.....
- 2 Hi Sue. How's it going? .....
- 3 Could you go and get my handbag from the other room? .....
- 4 Do you want to go on and do the next exercise? .....
- 5 What's going on in the next classroom? .....
- 6 When I got back, the others had gone. .....
- 7 I can't stay for the weekend; I have to go back on Friday. ....
- 8 Excuse me. Does this road go to the bus station? .....
- 9 My girlfriend had fish but I went for the chicken dish. ....

**84.3** Complete the dialogues with a phrasal verb or expression using **go**.

- 1 A: I hear you had problems with your exam?  
B: Yes, everything went wrong..... I couldn't answer any of the questions.
- 2 A: Can't he see very well?  
B: No, I'm afraid he's .....
- 3 A: Your uncle's just opened a new restaurant, hasn't he? How's it doing?  
B: Great. It's .....
- 4 A: I imagine your parents were angry that you had a party when they were away.  
B: They were. My dad .....
- 5 A: Simon isn't losing his hair already, is he?  
B: Yes, I'm afraid he's .....
- 6 A: Are the books downstairs in the staffroom?  
B: Yes. Could you ..... them for me?  
A: Yeah, sure.
- 7 A: Are you having a holiday this year?  
B: Yes, we're hoping to ..... in the summer.
- 8 A: What have you done?!  
B: I don't know. The lights just .....

**84.4**

## Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| Do you often go swimming in the summer?  | Do you often go for a walk on your own?            |
| Do you go clubbing most weekends?        | Do you like going out for a meal?                  |
| Do you often go shopping with a friend?  | Do you often go sightseeing on holiday?            |
| Did you often go for picnics as a child? | Do you enjoy going out for a drive in the country? |

مرجع زبان ایرانیان  
www.irLanguage.com



## A The five basic senses



sight



hearing



taste

tongue



smell



touch

To express it another way, the ability to see, hear, taste, smell and feel.

## B Sense verbs with adjectives

You look tired this evening. [from what I can see]  
 That man **sounded foreign**. [from another country, from what I could hear]  
 This cake **tastes** a bit strange.  
 Fresh bread **smells** wonderful.  
 This shirt **feels damp**. [slightly wet, often in an unpleasant way]

## Language help

www.irlanguage.com

The verbs above can all be used as nouns.  
*I like the look of this hotel.* [the appearance of it]  
*I love the sound of his voice.*

C Sense verbs with *like* or *as if/though*

We can describe things using sense verbs with *like* + noun or *as if/though* + clause, but *not like* + adjective (NOT She looks *like* nice). When we use *like* + noun, we are often describing how similar two things are.

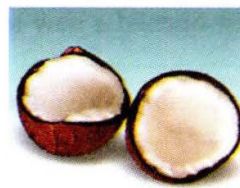
Have you ever had a nectarine? They look **like** peaches.  
 Did you hear that noise? It **sounded like** an alarm.  
 That shampoo **smells like** coconut. (also smells of coconut)  
 Don't you think this material **feels like** silk?  
 That boy looks as if he's trying to get over the wall.  
 I spoke to Isobel. It **sounded as though** they had a good time on holiday.



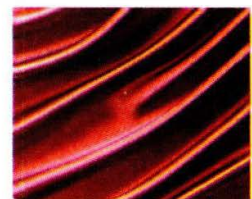
nectarine



alarm



coconut



silk

## Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

We also use *seem* and *appear* to describe a sense or feeling about someone or something, after we have seen them, talked to them, etc. Before *like* + noun, we usually use *seem*.  
*I saw Will and he **seemed/appeared** quite happy. The shop **appears/seems** to be very busy. Carrie said she wanted to travel a bit, which **seems like** a good idea.*

## D Verbs easily confused

If you look [look carefully] at the map, you can see [are able to see] the church on the left.  
 They've been **watching** that man for weeks. [paying attention to something, often for a long time]  
 He ran into me because he wasn't **looking**. [paying attention]  
 I **watched/saw** a film on TV. I saw a film at the cinema. (NOT I **watched** a film at the cinema.)  
 I heard [was able to hear] what she said but I wasn't **listening**. [paying attention]  
 Don't **touch** the oven [put your hand on it]. It's hot!  
 Just feel my feet [put your hand on them to discover something about them]. Aren't they cold?



# Exercises

85.1 Cover the opposite page. What are the five basic senses?

sight .....

85.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences.

- 1 I was very angry with Tom – he just wasn't *hearing* / (*listening to*) what I was saying.
- 2 I was *listening to* / *hearing* the radio when I *listened to* / *heard* a terrible noise outside.
- 3 She turned up the volume but I still couldn't *listen to* / *hear* it.
- 4 There's a good film on at the cinema. Have you *watched* / *seen* it?
- 5 Quick. Come and *watch* / *look at* this man walking by.
- 6 We *watched* / *looked at* the birds while they were eating food from the bird table.
- 7 If you stand near the fire, you can *touch* / *feel* how hot it is.
- 8 You mustn't *touch* / *feel* the paintings in the museum.
- 9 If you *see* / *look* carefully, you can *look* / *see* how the man does the magic trick.
- 10 Anya wants to get a parrot, which *seems* / *appears* like a strange thing to do.

85.3 Complete the sentences with a different sense verb and a word from the box. Add *like* where necessary.

<del>delicious</del> a church an alarm very nice damp coconut calm and relaxed silk
--

- 1 Petra has just taken the cakes out of the oven and they smell delicious .....
- 2 The sheets on her bed looked expensive, and when I touched them, they .....
- 3 I could see something quite tall in the distance. It .....
- 4 When I heard the noise I jumped out of bed because it .....
- 5 Have you tried these biscuits? They .....
- 6 I've just met my new class; they .....
- 7 I don't want to sit on the grass. It .....
- 8 I saw her before the exam and she .....

85.4 Complete the middle part of the sentences.

- 1 Alexei said that Lola was doing well, so it sounds as if/though ..... she'll pass the exam.
- 2 Erin told me about the accident. It ..... it was quite serious.
- 3 Put your hand on the radiator. Does it ..... it's getting warm?
- 4 I've just spoken to Tom. He ..... he's got a cold.
- 5 Have you tried the soup? It ..... it needs a bit more salt to me.
- 6 Is that your little boy on the floor? It ..... he's fallen over.
- 7 Anezka didn't ask any questions. It ..... she wasn't interested.

85.5

## Over to you

Complete the sentences about your own likes and dislikes. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- I love the smell of .....
- I hate the smell of .....
- I love the sound of .....
- I hate the sound of .....
- I love the taste of .....
- I hate the taste of .....

# 86 Uncountable nouns

مرجع زبان ایرانینان

## A

### Common uncountable nouns

One of the problems with uncountable nouns is that many of them are countable in other languages.

#### Common mistakes

www.irLanguage.com

I need information. (NOT I need ~~an~~ information.) (no indefinite article)

I need some information. (NOT I need ~~informations~~.) (no plural form)

The homework was difficult. (NOT The homework ~~were~~ difficult.) (use with a singular verb)

- You can put all that **rubbish** in the bin over there. [things that you throw away because you do not want them]
- Is there any more **news** about the man who was injured?
- She gave me some good **advice** about buying a car. [what you think someone should do]
- Do the children get **pocket money**? [money that parents give regularly to their children]
- You need a lot of **equipment** for camping, e.g. tent, sleeping bag, torch, things for cooking, etc. [the things that are used for a particular activity]
- We sold the **furniture**. [tables, chairs, armchairs, etc.]
- The **scenery** is really beautiful. [the natural beauty you see around you]
- My **knowledge** of Russian is limited. [what I know about it]
- She's worked very hard and I believe she is **making progress**. [improving / getting better]
- Can you take the dog? We haven't got any **room** in our car. [empty space]
- Would anyone like some more **toast**?
- The children's **behaviour** was terrible: they were climbing all over the furniture and making a lot of noise. [the way you do and say things]



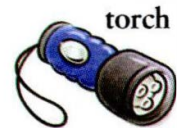
bin



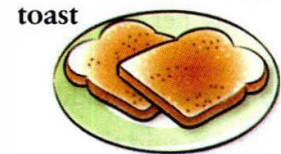
tent



sleeping bag



torch



toast

## B

### Uncountable nouns in dictionaries

Dictionaries show countable nouns with a (C) and uncountable nouns with a (U). Some nouns can be countable with one meaning, and uncountable with another.

**experience** (U) [the knowledge you get from doing a particular job or activity]

She's got a lot of **experience** of working with children.

**experience** (C) [something that happens to you that affects the way you feel]

I had so many fantastic **experiences** on my trip to Thailand and Japan.

**chance** (U) [luck]

Lotto is a game of **chance**.

**chance** (C) [the opportunity to do something]

He's had several **chances** to go abroad, but he's just not interested.

## C

### Making uncountable nouns countable

You can make some uncountable nouns singular. Sometimes we do this with a word like *piece* (for advice, equipment, toast, furniture, news), but in spoken English we often use a *bit* (*informal*) with most uncountable nouns.

a good **piece** of advice                      **an** interesting **bit** of news

**another** **piece** of toast                      just a **bit** of rubbish

# Exercises

## 86.1 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 I need some ~~informations~~ information .....
- 2 Our teacher has a news about the trip. ....
- 3 She gave me some good advices. ....
- 4 Her progress are very good. ....
- 5 We had a lot of homeworks yesterday. ....
- 6 The furnitures were very old. ....
- 7 I have no experiences of using these equipments. ....
- 8 I need to improve my knowledges of this new technology. ....

## 86.2 Make the uncountable nouns countable.

- |                                      |                                      |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1 I did some homework.               | I did <u>a bit of homework</u> ..... |
| 2 It's useful equipment.             | It's .....                           |
| 3 It was good advice.                | It was .....                         |
| 4 Do you want some more toast?       | Do you want .....                    |
| 5 She's making progress.             | She's making .....                   |
| 6 There's some rubbish on the floor. | There's .....                        |
| 7 I gave them some pocket money.     | I gave them .....                    |
| 8 I heard some news this morning.    | I heard .....                        |

## 86.3 Complete the dialogues.

- 1 A: Have you been given all the details?  
B: No, I need more information .....
- 2 A: She hasn't worked there long enough.  
B: No, she needs more .....
- 3 A: Is your flat big enough?  
B: No, we need more .....
- 4 A: Does she know what to do when she leaves school?  
B: No, she needs some .....
- 5 A: Don't you think the room looks empty?  
B: Yes, we need more .....
- 6 A: Is his English getting better?  
B: No, he isn't making any .....

## 86.4 Complete the sentences. The first letter has been given to help you.

- 1 I asked my teacher for some advice..... about grammar books.
- 2 I've had some great e..... when I've travelled on my own.
- 3 If we give him another c....., I'm sure he'll be able to do it.
- 4 That stuff over there is r.....; just throw it in the bin.
- 5 We camped on the hill above the lake because the s..... is so beautiful.
- 6 I don't know what's wrong with Celia, but her b..... was very strange this morning.
- 7 Do you have any e..... of working with computers?
- 8 I don't have any k..... of this subject; you'd better ask Fariah.

## 86.5 Use a dictionary to find out if these nouns are countable or uncountable. Keep a record of them in your notebook.

transport      luggage      suitcase      pasta      traffic      accident



# 87 Verb constructions 1

## A Verb + *-ing* form

A number of verbs are commonly followed by an *-ing* form.

QUESTIONS	ANSWERS
• Do you <b>enjoy</b> studying?	Yes, I do.
• Do you <b>mind</b> getting up early? [Is it OK for you, or not?]	No, I don't mind at all.
• Do you <b>like</b> or <b>dislike</b> having your photograph taken?	I hate having my picture taken.
• Do you usually <b>avoid</b> speaking to strangers at parties? [try not to do something]	Yes. I prefer to talk to people that I already know.
• Can you <b>imagine</b> being without a car? [think of yourself in a situation with no car]	No, I can't. I need my car.
• Have you ever <b>considered</b> [thought about] living in another country?	Yes, many times. I'd like to live abroad.
• Would you <b>recommend</b> [advise] having a holiday in the capital city of your country? If so, would you <b>suggest</b> going at a particular time of the year?	Yes, I would, and I would suggest going in spring or autumn.

### Common mistakes

I enjoy going there. (NOT I enjoy ~~to go~~ there.) They suggested leaving early. (NOT They suggested ~~to leave~~ early.) He recommended staying there. (NOT He recommended ~~to stay~~ there.)

## B Verb + *to* infinitive

- I **hope** to see them next week. [want to see them and believe I will see them]
- They **agreed** to help me. [said they will help]
- I **intend** to leave next month. [plan]
- I **offered** to help them. [said I was happy to help]
- I **attempted** to cook the dinner, but it was terrible. [tried]
- I **promised** to bring her book back. [said I would definitely bring it back]
- The shop assistant was very rude, so I **demanded** to see the manager. [said in a firm way]

## C Verb + (object) + preposition + noun/*-ing*

- A: Jo has just rung and asked me **for** advice about Turkey. They're **thinking of**<sup>1</sup> going there.
- B: Well, be careful. They went to India last year on your advice and then **blamed**<sup>2</sup> you for the terrible holiday they had.
- A: That was their fault. They **insisted on**<sup>3</sup> going in the summer when it was far too hot.

<sup>1</sup> thinking about going to Turkey (often used in the continuous and followed by a noun/*-ing* form (NOT I'm thinking ~~to go~~ there.))

<sup>2</sup> said you were responsible for something bad, in this case the terrible holiday

<sup>3</sup> said they must go (in the summer)

# Exercises

## 87.1 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences.

- 1 I hope *seeing* / ***to see*** them.
- 2 They agreed *helping* / *to help* me.
- 3 We enjoy *staying* / *to stay* by the sea.
- 4 I suggested *going* / *to go* on the train.
- 5 She insisted *in* / *on* paying for our meal.
- 6 We must attempt *getting* / *to get* there on time.
- 7 Have you considered *working* / *to work* in a bank?
- 8 I demanded *speaking* / *to speak* to the doctor in charge.
- 9 I asked *him help* / *him for help*.
- 10 They blamed me *for* / *of* it.
- 11 I don't mind *waiting* / *to wait* for you.
- 12 I try to avoid *travelling* / *to travel* in the rush hour.

## 87.2 Complete the sentences with the most suitable verb.

- 1 Have you ***asked***..... the waiter for the bill?
- 2 My sister is ..... of spending the summer in France if she can afford it.
- 3 I've had a computer for about 20 years; I can't ..... being without one.
- 4 We always try to ..... driving into town in the rush hour.
- 5 The accident wasn't my fault but they ..... me for it.
- 6 We're ..... to see my parents later this week. We had ..... to go last week, but Marsha was ill and we couldn't go.
- 7 I ..... meeting your friends; they were really nice.
- 8 Have you ever ..... moving out of a town and going to live in the country?
- 9 I offered to drive, but Harry ..... on taking his car because he said he ..... being a passenger.
- 10 Aleisha's parents weren't happy with the school, and they ..... to see the head teacher.

**87.3** When you learn new verbs, you may need to know the constructions that are used with them. A good dictionary will give you this information, usually with examples. Using a good English dictionary, find the constructions that commonly follow these verbs.

○ FORMAL *Might I suggest a white wine with your salmon, sir?* ○ [+ (that)] *I suggest (that) we wait a while before we make any firm decisions.* ○ *Liz suggested (that) I try the shop on Mill Road.* ○ [+ -ing VERB] *I suggested putting the matter to the committee.*

fancy + ..... pretend + ..... or .....  
 decide + ..... or ..... accuse + .....

## 87.4

### Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions in the questionnaire on the opposite page. If possible, ask someone else the same questions. Then complete the sentences about yourself using the correct construction after each verb.

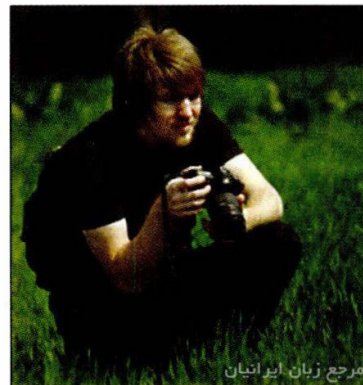
- I like .....
- I dislike .....
- I don't mind .....
- I'm thinking .....
- I can't imagine .....
- I hope .....
- I intend .....



# 88 Verb constructions 2

## A A great opportunity

“I’m 24 years old, and I work in a photography studio. It’s not a very exciting job but I love photography and the pay isn’t bad. But, two months ago, I was given the chance to go to Italy and work on a film by a famous director. My best friend thought that it was a fantastic opportunity and advised<sup>1</sup> me to go. Dad wasn’t so sure. He didn’t try and persuade<sup>2</sup> me not to go, but he warned<sup>3</sup> me that it would be hard work, and reminded<sup>4</sup> me that it was only three months, then I’d be out of a job. I realised<sup>5</sup> that my girlfriend wasn’t happy about it either, but I promised<sup>6</sup> her that I would phone every day, and suggested<sup>7</sup> that she could come out to Italy for a holiday while I was there. I didn’t mention<sup>8</sup> that I was part of a small team with three other women. Anyway, I’m going.”



- <sup>1</sup> say what you think someone should do
- <sup>2</sup> make someone agree to do something by talking a lot
- <sup>3</sup> tell someone that something bad may happen, to stop it happening
- <sup>4</sup> tell someone something so that they don’t forget it
- <sup>5</sup> understand something (that) you didn’t understand before
- <sup>6</sup> say (that) you will certainly do something
- <sup>7</sup> tell someone about a possible idea or plan
- <sup>8</sup> say something, often briefly or quickly

- advise + obj + inf
- persuade + obj + inf
- warn + obj + (that) ...
- remind + obj + (that) ...
- realise + (that) ...
- promise + (obj) + (that) ...
- suggest + (that) ...
- mention + (that) ...

### Language help

[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

Some verbs can be followed by different constructions. We can also say, for example:

*I suggested going there.*

suggest + -ing

*She warned me not to go.*

warn + obj + inf

*He reminded me to post the letter.*

remind + obj + inf

## B Other verbs

Here are some more verbs which are used with the same constructions.

**Verb + (that) ...:** *say, hope, notice, recommend* and *expect*.

I said that I was busy. (NOT I said ~~him~~ that I was busy.)

I hope (that) you’ll come and see us soon.

When I left, I noticed that the door was open. [could see]

I recommended that we all go together, so no one gets lost.

I expect (that) he’ll ring us later. [think or believe that something will happen]

**Verb + object + (that) ...:** *tell, show* and *convince*.

I told them (that) they could leave early.

He tried to convince me that I needed some new clothes. [make me believe]

**Verb + object + to infinitive:** *ask, tell, want, allow, expect, remind, help* and *encourage*.

Tracey asked me to look after her cat.

They told us to wait outside.

They want us to stay at school.

I expected them to be here by now.

I had to remind him to buy the food. [tell somebody so that they do not forget]

She helped me to write the report. (You can also say: She helped me write the report.)

My parents encouraged me to read. [gave me support and confidence to make it possible]



# Exercises

## 88.1 Correct the mistakes.

- 1 She encouraged me going. *She encouraged me to go.*
- 2 He told it's impossible.
- 3 I asked that Talia stay with me.
- 4 She suggested us to go to an Italian restaurant.
- 5 I warned them not going.
- 6 He helped me buying my suit.
- 7 She allowed us go.
- 8 He said me the film was terrible.
- 9 She advised me buy a dictionary.
- 10 I recommended to stay there.
- 11 He reminded me go to the bank.
- 12 I want that he leaves.

## 88.2 Complete the sentences with a verb from the box in the correct form.

realise	warn	expect	remind	convince	encourage
help	persuade	mention	recommend	notice	hope

- 1 She couldn't breathe easily, so I *realised* that something was wrong.
- 2 When we went in, I that people were looking at us.
- 3 Martin knew the area was dangerous but he didn't me not to go there.
- 4 I didn't want the job but my mother me to take it. It was a mistake.
- 5 I wasn't sure about the plan, but my boss me that it would work.
- 6 My uncle that we try the new Chinese restaurant.
- 7 When I spoke to Jodie, I that we were busy tonight.
- 8 Our teacher has always us to practise our English outside of class.
- 9 Fortunately Aidan me that it was Marsha's birthday; I'd forgotten.
- 10 I said I would Ian to put up the shelves.
- 11 They said they'd come, so I that they'll be here soon.
- 12 I that I pass my exams.

## 88.3 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 He was given some money and I recommended *that he put it in the bank.*
- 2 Some of them were getting hungry so I suggested
- 3 She said there were strange noises outside her flat, so I advised
- 4 When I saw her face, I noticed
- 5 When I was young, my parents sometimes allowed
- 6 As soon as I put on the coat, I realised
- 7 It was only a few minutes to the beach, but I still couldn't persuade
- 8 Her train was delayed, so I expect
- 9 The water can make you ill and I warned
- 10 I borrowed his laptop yesterday but promised him that

## 88.4

### Over to you

Look at the verbs on the opposite page again and translate them into your own language. Do you use the translated verbs with the same constructions? If not, these are the verbs that may cause you the most problems when you are speaking English.

### A Extreme adjectives

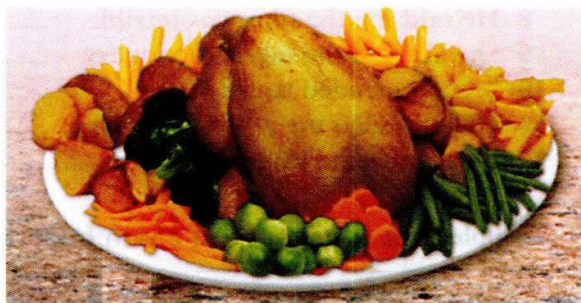
There are many 'extreme' adjectives we use to say that something is very good, or very small, or very surprising, etc.

We were lucky – the weather was **marvellous**. [very good; *syns* terrific, wonderful, amazing]

Don't go and see that film – it's **awful**. [very bad; *syn* dreadful]

I was delighted she passed her exam. [very pleased]

It's a nice modern flat, but it's absolutely **tiny**. [very small]



I wasn't very hungry, but they gave us a **huge** meal. [very big; *syn* enormous]

You should watch that programme; you'll find it absolutely **fascinating**. [very interesting]

Everyone was really **exhausted** by the end of the day. [very tired]

Bungee jumping is the most **terrifying** thing I've ever done. [very frightening]

Computers are an essential part of modern life. [very important and necessary]

The food was **delicious**. [very good; but usually only for food]

#### Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

The food was **absolutely marvellous**. (NOT The food was ~~very marvellous~~.) We can use **absolutely** or **really** before extreme adjectives, e.g. *absolutely awful*, *really terrific*, but we can't use **very**. We use **very** or **really** with gradable adjectives which do not have an extreme meaning, e.g. *very big*, *very good*, *very nice*, *very tired*, *really good*, *really tired*, etc. (NOT ~~absolutely big~~)

### B Adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed*

A large group of adjectives can have an *-ing* or *-ed* ending. The *-ing* ending describes a person, thing or situation; the *-ed* ending describes the effect on someone of this person, thing or situation.

I don't know if other people were **bored**, but I thought it was a very **boring** lesson.

The weather is so **depressing** at the moment; it's making everyone feel **depressed**.

#### Common mistakes

www.irLanguage.com

I was **bored** by that film. (NOT I was ~~boring~~ by that film.)

We're very **interested** in the new designs. (NOT We're very ~~interesting~~ in the new designs.)

These adjectives can all end in *-ing* or *-ed*, depending on the meaning.

It was really **tiring** going up that hill. [making you feel tired]

I was **amazed** she could climb that wall. [very surprised]

My exam results were very **disappointing**. [not as good as I expected]

She was **annoyed** that I forgot to tell her. [angry]

I kept calling her Emma, so I was **embarrassed** when Ben told me her name was Angela. [feeling a bit stupid because of something you have said or done]

The map he gave us was very **confusing**. [difficult to understand]

We were **shocked** by the violence in the film. [very surprised in an unpleasant way]

# Exercises

## 89.1 Put the words into the correct column.

bad	<del>dreadful</del>	important	small	exhausted
terrified	tired	essential	frightened	tiny

gradable adjectives	extreme adjectives
bad	dreadful

## 89.2 Change the adjectives where possible to give the email a more positive and/or more extreme effect. Include *absolutely* or *really* two or three times.

Dear Sandy

an (absolutely) exhausting

Arrived on Sunday evening after a ~~very tiring~~ journey. We're very pleased with the hotel: our room is very big, and the food is very nice. We've been lucky with the weather as well. The first day was wet but the last three days have been very nice.

Tomorrow we're going to walk the coastal path to Dartmouth Castle. It's quite a difficult route and people tell us it's very important to take a map, but it sounds very interesting, so I'm looking forward to it.

I'll write again in a couple of days and tell you all about it.

love

Benita

## 89.3 Complete the dialogues so that B agrees with A, using a suitable adjective from the opposite page.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 A: I was <u>very interested</u> in her talk.<br>B: Yes, it was <u>fascinating</u> .....      | 4 A: Did you have a <u>nice</u> holiday?<br>B: Yes, absolutely .....                                  |
| 2 A: Were you <u>very frightened</u> ?<br>B: Yes, it was absolutely .....                      | 5 A: I expect you were <u>very pleased</u> with your score.<br>B: Yes, I was absolutely .....         |
| 3 A: It was <u>surprising</u> to see the children behave so badly.<br>B: I know. We were ..... | 6 A: I expect you were a bit <u>angry</u> when they arrived an hour late?<br>B: Yes, I was very ..... |

## 89.4 Write an adjective to describe how the people felt in these situations.

- They walked ten miles, then spent the afternoon cutting down trees. exhausted.....
- From the description in the travel brochure, they expected a beautiful big villa by the sea. In actual fact it was quite small, not very nice, and miles from the beach. ....
- I arrived in jeans, but everyone else was wearing very formal clothes. ....
- One person told them the street was on the left, another told them to turn right, and a third person said they had to go back to the station. ....
- My brother has a flat and it's usually in a terrible mess – he's very untidy. But yesterday when I visited him, the place was incredibly tidy. In fact, everything looked new. ....
- I got my results yesterday and I passed every exam with a grade A. ....



A *At, on and in*

At a point or place, e.g. I met her at the bus stop. He's at work at the moment.  
 On a surface, e.g. The book's on the desk. They sat on the floor. I put the picture on the wall.  
 In an area, space, or inside something, e.g. He's in the kitchen. She lives in Warsaw/Poland. The knife's in the top drawer.

## Common mistakes

I met them at the airport. (NOT I met them ~~on~~ the airport.)  
 There's a computer on my desk. (NOT There's a computer ~~in~~ my desk.)  
 The conference is being held in Delhi. (NOT The conference is being held ~~at~~ Delhi.)

## B Where exactly?

I know they live in Danvers Street, and I think they're at number twenty-three.

Their house is beyond the farm [on the other side of the farm], by [near] the old church.

They've just bought a house right [exactly] beside/by [next to] the river.

Their office is above the shop (*opp* below).

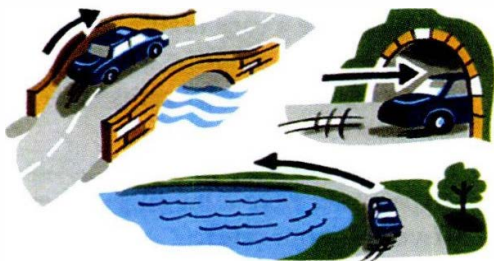
I'm sure there's a chemist on the left before the bank. [first there is a chemist, and then a bank; *opp* after]

I saw your bike in the back garden against the wall. [touching the wall]

Your photographs are in the spare room beneath/underneath a pile of newspapers. [under]

You can just see the top of the building among the trees. [somewhere in the middle of the trees]

## C Movement



We came over the bridge (*opp* under), then through the tunnel and round the lake.



The woman came after us [followed in order to catch us], but we managed to climb into the back of my dad's van. Fortunately she went past the van and didn't see us.

The mouse ran out of the back door (*opp* into), towards the gate, then disappeared down a hole.




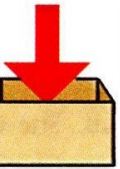
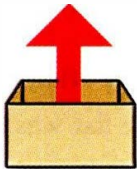

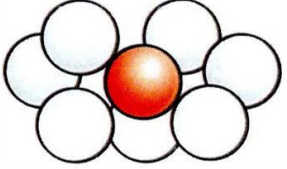
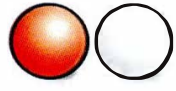

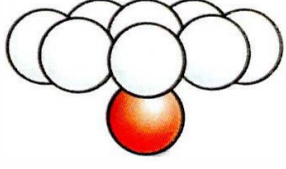
# Exercises

## 90.1 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I put the milk in the fridge.
- 2 They live ..... the next road.
- 3 They live ..... 34 Lawrence Street.
- 4 Your clothes are ..... the floor.
- 5 I met her ..... a party.
- 6 She works ..... Moscow.
- 7 The dictionary is ..... my desk.
- 8 I sat ..... the bed and wrote the letter.
- 9 I left my books ..... school.
- 10 There was snow ..... the ground when I arrived.
- 11 The key is ..... my jacket pocket.
- 12 Mausha's ..... work this morning.

## 90.2 Put the prepositions in the box under the correct picture.

beside   towards   out of   ~~down~~   among   into   up   underneath

			
1 <u>down</u> .....	3 .....	5 .....	7 .....
			
2 .....	4 .....	6 .....	8 .....

## 90.3 Complete the dialogues so that B says the opposite to A.

- 1 A: Did you go up the hill?  
B: No, down the hill.
- 2 A: Did you climb over the fence?  
B: No, we went .....
- 3 A: Did you see her get into the car?  
B: No, but I saw her .....
- 4 A: Did you say we had to turn left before the bridge?  
B: No, turn left .....
- 5 A: Does she live in the flat above you?  
B: No, she's in the flat .....
- 6 A: Did you say the bed was in the middle of the room?  
B: No, it's ..... the wall.

## 90.4

### Over to you

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

Answer the questions, and give reasons for your answers. If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

- 1 Is it a good idea to live right beside a hospital?
- 2 Would you like to live above a restaurant?
- 3 Are you happy to drive on icy roads?
- 4 Do you like putting lots of things on your bedroom wall?
- 5 In a plane or train, do you like sitting by the window?
- 6 Would you like to live among lots of rich and famous people?





# Exercises

## 91.1 Form sentences from the words.

- 1 get occasionally I early up I occasionally get up early.....
- 2 me ever phones she hardly .....
- 3 have leg my broken never I .....
- 4 frequently them I at visit weekends .....
- 5 brother often me Sunday calls quite on my .....
- 6 summer saw I him rarely the during .....
- 7 office always in she the is eight before .....

## 91.2 Replace the underlined adverb with a different adverb that has a similar meaning.

- 1 The film was pretty good. *rather*.....
- 2 She hardly ever goes to conferences now. ....
- 3 The shops were quite busy. ....
- 4 They are two sisters, but they look totally different. ....
- 5 I thought the film was a bit disappointing, didn't you? ....
- 6 I'm afraid I'm extremely busy next week. ....
- 7 We often ask them to turn their music down. ....

## 91.3 Put the two ideas into one sentence by using a suitable adverb.

- 1 I walked up the path. I didn't make a noise. *I walked up the path quietly*.....
- 2 I must speak to her. It's important. ....
- 3 I asked him to move his car. I did it in a nice and correct way. ....
- 4 I spoke to her. I made sure the others didn't know. ....
- 5 He ran out of the room. It was very quick and unexpected. ....
- 6 I spoke to her this morning. It was only for a few minutes. ....

## 91.4 Change the underlined adverbs in 1–4 to make them more positive. Change the underlined adverbs in 5–7 to make them less negative.

- 1 The play was quite interesting. *very*.....
- 2 I thought they were very good. ....
- 3 He's been getting quite good marks in his exams. ....
- 4 It's a pretty nice house. ....
- 5 John said the flat was very small. ....
- 6 They said it was fairly boring. ....
- 7 His clothes were very dirty. ....

## 91.5

### Over to you

Make the sentences true for you by adding a suitable adverb, in the correct place.

- 1 I clean my teeth after breakfast. *I always clean my teeth after breakfast*.....
- 2 I buy clothes I don't like. ....
- 3 I lose things. ....
- 4 I forget things. ....
- 5 I remember my dreams. ....
- 6 I speak to strangers on buses and trains. ....
- 7 I give money to people in the street if they ask me. ....

Now think about each of your answers to the sentences above. Do you think they are:

- a) fairly typical?      b) slightly unusual?      c) quite unusual?

If possible, compare your answers with someone else.

# 92 Time and sequence

## A When / As soon as

The meaning of these two time expressions is almost the same, but *as soon as* suggests something more immediate or important.

I'll phone my uncle *when / as soon as* I get home.

*As soon as / When* you've finished this exercise, you can go home.

### Common mistakes

I'll see you *when* I get there. (NOT I'll see you *when* I ~~will~~ get there.)

We don't use a future form after *when / as soon as*.

## B Two things happening at the same time

Carla got ready *while* I cooked the dinner. [two long actions]

The accident happened *while* I was on my way to work. [a longer action 'on my way to work' and a short action 'the accident'; we can also use *when* or *as* here.]

I saw him (*just*) *as* I came out of the office. [two short actions happening at the same time; we can also use *when* here]

## C One thing after another

We met the others in the café, and *then / after that / afterwards* we went to the match.

I talked to Joe, and *afterwards* [at a later time but usually the same day] I came home.

I was in Caracas for three months, and *then / after that* I went to Colombia.

*After* my visit to New York, I decided to have a rest.

We had something to eat *before* going out.

### Common mistakes

*After seeing* the film, we went home.  
(NOT *After see* the film, we went home.)

## D A sequence\* of actions

We had a really nice holiday. *First of all / First* we spent a few days in St Moritz. *After that / Then* we drove down the coast and stayed in Portofino for a week. *Finally*, we went back to Switzerland to stay with my uncle. (*Finally* is used here to introduce the last thing in a list.)

\* one action after another, and so on

## E At first ... eventually

*To begin with*, the two girls got on very well when they shared the flat. But *after a while* [a period of time], they started arguing about various things, and *eventually* [finally, after a long time or a lot of problems] Beth walked out and found a new place.

*At first* I enjoyed the classes, but *after a while* it got a bit boring, and *in the end* [finally, after a period of time or thought] I left.

## F A list of reasons

We can use *firstly / for one thing / for a start* to introduce a first reason for something, and then *secondly/besides/anyway* to add a further reason.

A: What's wrong with her new dress?

B: *Firstly*, it's a horrible colour, and *secondly*, I don't think it suits her.

A: Why can't we go out tonight?

B: Well, *for one thing / for a start*, I've got a lot of work – and *besides/anyway*, I can't afford it.

# Exercises

92.1 Find five more pairs of words/phrases that are similar in meaning.

<del>then</del>	for one thing	when	besides	finally	at first	for a start
in the end	<del>after that</del>	to begin with	as soon as	anyway		

then / after that .....

.....

.....

92.2 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- I rang my mum when / while I was waiting for my train.
- I'll give them your message as soon as I *get / will get* there.
- Maria cleaned the kitchen *as / while* I did the bathroom.
- Before *leave / leaving* they went to an exhibition in a little gallery.
- We can have lunch *when / as soon as* we've finished this.
- The phone rang *while / just as* I was shutting the front door.
- We spent the morning in the park and *after that / afterwards* we went home for lunch.
- The letter arrived *while / just as* we were having lunch.
- I met the others *when / as* I was on my way to the station.
- After *to clean / cleaning* my room, I was exhausted.

92.3 Complete the dialogues.

- A: Why do you want to stay in this evening, when we could go to Karl's party?  
B: Well, for one thing ....., I'd like to watch a programme on TV, and ....., I don't think it'll be a very good party.
- A: What did you do in Portugal?  
B: Well, ..... we flew to Lisbon and spent a few days there. .... we took the train down to Lagos and spent a week on the Algarve with a couple we met in London. And ..... we went to Faro and flew back from there.
- A: Did Matt enjoy his time in India?  
B: Well, ..... I think he found it difficult because the food and weather are so different. But after a ..... he got used to it, and didn't want to come home.
- A: Why can't the company pay for me to go to the conference?  
B: Well, ..... the boss doesn't seem to think it's very important, and ..... we're too busy at the moment to give anyone time off work.
- A: Did the new company do well?  
B: Yeah, ..... it did very well. But then the manager left, and after a ..... they started losing money. ...., they had to close down.

92.4 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- We had a game of table tennis and afterwards we went for a drink .....
- I'll give you the answers to this exercise when .....
- I'll text you as soon as .....
- I must remember to lock the back door before .....
- He thinks he dropped the letter as .....
- I worked with a partner in class. I looked up half of the words while .....
- We were in a traffic jam for hours but eventually .....
- If we phone his home, he probably won't be there. Anyway, .....



## Addition and contrast

### A *As well (as), what's more, in addition (to), besides*

We often link ideas using *and*, e.g. The food's nice *and* very good value. There are other words and phrases we also use to add more information. Sometimes we still include *and* or *also*.

The restaurant has excellent food; it's *also* very good value.

You always get a good view, *and* the seats are comfortable *as well*. (*syn* too)

*As well as* getting cheaper tickets, I *also* got the opportunity to buy them in advance.

The clothes are nice, *and what's more*, the shop is open every day of the week.

The scheme gives young people experience. *In addition*, companies can afford to employ them.

*In addition to* the new food department, they're *also* planning to open a café.

*Besides* being a mum with four children, she's *also* a successful designer.

### B *Although, despite, in spite of*

We use these link words when there are two ideas in a sentence, and the second is surprising or not expected. They can be used at the beginning or in the middle of the sentence.

*Although / Even though* the sun was shining, it wasn't very warm.

We found the place quite easily, *although / even though* we didn't know where it was.

They went for a walk *despite* the fact that it was raining.

*Despite* having no money, he *still* seemed very happy.

They got there on time *in spite of* the delay.

*In spite of* all the problems, we *still* enjoyed the trip.

### Language help

We can use *still* to emphasise that we didn't expect something to happen or be true, e.g. *He didn't do any work but he still passed the exam; The work is very hard, but he still enjoys it.*

### C *However, yet, though*

We can use *however* and *yet* when the second part of an idea is surprising after the first part. *However* is often used to link ideas in two separate sentences. *Though* can be used in a similar way in spoken English, but usually comes at the end of the sentence. Notice the use of commas (,) here, and the different positions of *however*.

I don't agree with a lot of his methods. *However*, he is a very good teacher.

We didn't particularly like the house. The garden, *however*, was wonderful.

It was warm and sunny when we were there. Most of the time, *however*, it's quite cold.

We went in the autumn, *yet* it was still quite warm.

I didn't like the film much. I'm glad I went to see it, *though*.

They told us the shop was next to the station. We never found it, *though*.

### D *While and whereas*

We can use *while* and *whereas* to compare two different facts or situations.

Alex is very quick to understand, *whereas/while* the others are quite slow.

I get £20 an hour, *while* Josh only gets £12.

The speed limit on this road is 80kph, *whereas* it's 130kph on the motorway.

I was very keen on the film, *whereas* Ali didn't like it at all.

# Exercises

## 93.1 Put the words into the correct column.

in addition    although    in spite of    as well    however    also    what's more    despite	
words that add more information	words that introduce surprising information
in addition	

## 93.2 Choose the correct word(s) to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- 1 Although / *In spite of* we left late, we still got there in time.
- 2 She's going on holiday with friends. Her parents, *however* / *whereas*, are not very happy about it.
- 3 We decided to work *in spite of* / *despite* the fact we were on holiday.
- 4 They enjoyed the course, *even though* / *as well* it was very difficult.
- 5 I told John the car was too expensive. *However* / *Although*, he still bought it.
- 6 Most people tried to help us. They were very friendly *too* / *as well*.
- 7 Ethan spends his time in the library, *while* / *whereas* the others are always playing football.
- 8 It was a fantastic evening, *although* / *despite* the terrible food.

## 93.3 Combine parts from each column to form five short texts.

- |   |  |  |
|---|--|--|
| She went to school today<br>She always worked hard in class,<br>She has the ability to do the job.<br>She didn't pass the exam<br>She worked there for ten years. | in spite of<br>although<br>However,<br>whereas<br>What's more, | she was never happy in the job.<br>she is very experienced.<br>the help I gave her.<br>she didn't feel very well.<br>most of her classmates were lazy. |
|---|--|--|

.....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....  
 .....

## 93.4 Complete the sentences.

- 1 People say the hotel is very good. It's *also* ..... quite cheap.
- 2 ..... the fact that they were busy, they ..... helped us.
- 3 It's not the best dictionary you can buy. .... , it's better than nothing.
- 4 She managed to get there, ..... she didn't have a map like the others.
- 5 ..... heavy rain, they've also had very strong winds.
- 6 She's the youngest in the group, and she's better than most of them .....
- 7 I think you can do it. It won't be easy, .....
- 8 I was right at the back at the concert, ..... I could ..... hear everything.

## 93.5 Complete the sentences in a suitable way.

- 1 Although it's an old skirt, I *still* like it. (OR *it still* looks nice.) .....
- 2 My parents get up at 7.30, whereas .....
- 3 We enjoyed the holiday in spite of .....
- 4 If you buy a season ticket, you can travel as often as you like. What's more, .....
- 5 The exam was very difficult. However, .....
- 6 I understood what she was saying, although .....
- 7 My uncle is nearly 70, but he still .....

## A Reason

I went home early because I was feeling tired.

**As/Since** I was feeling tired, I went home early. (We don't usually start a sentence with *because*.)

I was feeling tired, **so** I went home early. (This is very common in spoken English.)

The **reason** I went home early was that I was feeling tired.

We can also use **because of** with a different construction. Compare:

They go there **because** the weather is wonderful. (because + noun + verb)

They go there **because of** the wonderful weather. (because of + (adjective) + noun)

**Due to** means the same as **because of**, and is often used to explain the reason for a problem.

The plane was late **due to** bad weather. (**Due to** is often used after the verb *be*.)

## Common mistakes

It's a pity you can't go on holiday **because** Chiclayo is very nice. (NOT It's a pity you can't go on holiday ~~because of~~ Chiclayo is very nice.)

We moved house **because of** my father's work. (NOT We moved house ~~because~~ my father's work.)

## B Purpose

A **purpose** is an intention or reason for doing something.

The **purpose of** the meeting is to plan next year's timetable. [the reason *for* the meeting]

We often introduce a purpose using **so** (that) or (in order) to:

I bought this book **so** (that) I could improve my English.

They went home early (in order) **to** watch the match on television.

We moved house **so** (that) we could send our children to this school.

She went into town (in order) **to** do some shopping.

## C Result

These link words/phrases are used when one thing happens because another thing has happened. **Therefore** and **as a result** are more formal than **so**, and less common in spoken English.

I left my ticket at home, **so** I had to buy another one.

They've got more money, and **therefore** they can afford to buy the best football players.

I forgot to send the email. **As a result**, no one knew about the meeting.

## D Conditions

We sometimes use **whether** [if] when we are not sure about something.

I didn't buy it **because** I wasn't sure **whether** you'd like it.

I spoke to the others, but I don't know **whether** they're coming.

We'll be late **unless** we leave now. [if we don't leave now]

**Unless** the weather improves [if the weather doesn't improve], we won't be able to go.

I have to go now, **otherwise** [because if I don't] I'll miss the last bus.

You'll have to turn up the music, **otherwise** [because if you don't] they won't be able to hear it.

You can borrow it as long as you bring it back by Thursday. [but you *must* bring it back]

You can wear what you like as long as you look quite smart. [but you *must* look quite smart]

I'm taking my umbrella in case it rains. [I'm doing A because B might happen later.]

Take some money in case you need to get a taxi.



# Exercises

## 94.1 Rewrite the sentences using *because of*. Make any necessary changes.

- 1 I couldn't play because my arm was broken. *I couldn't play because of my broken arm.*
- 2 Teresa got the job because her exam results were good.
- 3 The weather was terrible, so we couldn't eat outside.
- 4 As she had a cold, she didn't go to school.
- 5 The light was bad, so the referee stopped the game.
- 6 The traffic was terrible; I was late.
- 7 He's only 17, and therefore he can't vote.

## 94.2 Complete the sentences.

- 1 I must write that letter now, *otherwise* I'll forget to do it.
- 2 I'll take some sandwiches with me I get hungry.
- 3 We agreed to buy my daughter a dog she takes it for a walk every day.
- 4 I left early miss the rush-hour traffic.
- 5 My girlfriend didn't feel very well, , we left the party quite early.
- 6 there's a problem, I won't disturb you.
- 7 You can borrow my dictionary you bring it back on Monday.
- 8 You'd better tidy your room, your mother will be angry.
- 9 I sent Luiza an invitation, but I don't know she's coming.
- 10 The I didn't ring you was that I'd lost your phone number.

## 94.3 Complete the memo.

\_ \_ X

**To:** All staff  
**From:** Daniel Myers  
**Date:** 09 August  
**Subject:** Temporary roadworks

---

From next Monday, the council are closing both approach roads to the factory. The <sup>1</sup>..... *purpose*..... of this, I believe, is to install new gas pipes. <sup>2</sup>..... this will create long delays, could I please ask staff to leave home a few minutes early in the morning <sup>3</sup>..... everyone gets here on time. The roadworks also mean that you won't be able to park on the street, and <sup>4</sup>..... it may be a good idea to leave your cars at home <sup>5</sup>..... it is absolutely impossible for you to use public transport.

I haven't been told <sup>6</sup>..... the roadworks will continue for the whole week, but I will let you know as soon as possible, and I apologise for the inconvenience.

Daniel Myers  
 Office manager

## 94.4

### Over to you

Complete the sentences in a way that is true for you.

- I want to improve my English because .....
- I don't know whether my English .....
- I often need to write words down in my notebook, otherwise I .....
- I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, therefore .....
- Speaking English may be important in order to .....

## A Formal English

Formal English is more common in writing, but you will also hear examples in more formal spoken English, e.g. announcements, speeches, television news, or discussions.

**NOTICE IN CAFE:** Only food **purchased** [bought] here may be eaten **on the premises** [here].

**POLICE STATEMENT:** The man is being questioned **regarding** [about] the robbery last night.

**BUSINESS LETTER:** I **regret to inform you** [I am sorry to say] that we are unable to ...

**THEATRE ANNOUNCEMENT:** The play will **commence** [start] in two minutes.

**INFORMATION NOTICE:** If you **require** [need] **further assistance** [more help], please **contact** the above address.

**STATION ANNOUNCEMENT:** The next train to **depart** [leave] from platform 7 will be the 7:22 to Reading.

**FORMAL LETTER:** We are not in a position to **grant** [give or allow] you a visa to this country.

**AIRPORT ANNOUNCEMENT:** Will passengers for Miami please **proceed to** [go to] gate 36.

## B Informal English

Informal language is more common in spoken English, and also in most emails or letters to friends. The words and phrases in **bold** in these dialogues are all informal.

A: Who's **Callum**?

B: A **mate** [a friend] of mine.

A: Really?

B: Yeah, I see him **quite a bit** [often]; he's a nice **bloke** [man].

A: Toby, I'm afraid I can't make it [come] this evening.

B: Oh, that's a shame.

A: Yeah, I'm sorry, but the **thing is** [the problem is], Ella's not well, so I'll have to look after the **kids** [children].

B: OK, don't worry. There will still be twelve or so [about twelve] at the meeting, and I'll ring you later and let you know what happens.

A: Cheers [thanks]. That would be great.

A: I bet [I'm sure] you're hungry.

B: Yes, I'm **dying for** something to eat. [want to eat something very much]

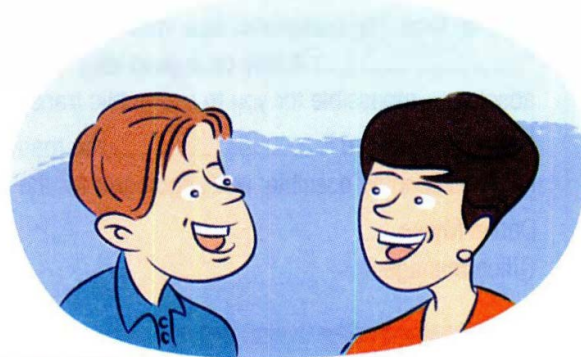
A: Well, I think you'll find some **stuff** in the fridge.

A: What are you **up to** this evening? [What are you doing?]

B: Nothing much. Why?

A: Well, would you like to see the new Coen Brothers film? I've heard it's great. [very good; *syn* terrific]

B: Really? My brother saw it and said it was a load of **rubbish**. [terrible]



### Language help

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

We often use the uncountable noun **stuff**, especially in spoken English, to refer to an uncountable noun or a group of things. We do this when others know what we are talking about, or if we don't need to be exact. Put this **stuff** in the cupboard. [e.g. plates, food, toys] We carried our camping **stuff**. [equipment] What's this **stuff** in the fridge in the blue bottle? [liquid]

# Exercises

95.1 Put the words into the correct column on the right.

depart	mate
cheers	commence
regarding	terrific
purchase	bloke
proceed to	kids

formal	informal
depart	

95.2 Now write a synonym for each of the words in 95.1.

depart	leave	mate	
cheers		commence	
regarding		terrific	
purchase		bloke	
proceed to		kids	

95.3 Replace the underlined words and phrases with more informal words or phrases.

- I'm sure your parents are pleased? I bet .....
- I'd love to come, but the problem is, my mother wants us to go and see her. ....
- I watched that new series on TV last night. It was absolutely terrible. ....
- What are you doing this weekend? .....
- I really want something to drink. ....
- None of them can come on Monday. ....
- Jamie is a friend of mine. ....
- We go there often. ....
- You can leave all those books, files and papers on the desk. ....
- We should be able to get approximately 40 on the coach. ....

95.4 Rewrite the underlined parts of this letter in more suitable formal English.

- regarding .....
- .....
- .....
- .....

Dear Mr Collins

We are writing about<sup>1</sup> your application to the council for a disabled parking space outside your home. We're sorry to say<sup>2</sup> that we are unable to allow<sup>3</sup> this request as parking is the sole responsibility of the Highways Agency.

We suggest that if you need more help<sup>4</sup>, you should contact them on 01727 717 317.

95.5 Dictionaries will tell you if a word is *formal* or *informal/spoken*. Use your dictionary to find out if the underlined words here are *formal* or *informal/spoken*. What do they mean?

- I thought the film was a drag.
- Smoking isn't permitted.
- It's a scary film.
- This watch cost fifty quid.



## A Types of form

- a registration form where you enter your name on an official list, e.g. at a school or college (also called an **enrolment form** when you are applying to do a course of study)
- an entry form if you want to enter for an exam, e.g. Cambridge First Certificate
- a landing card for people from some countries when they enter the UK
- a visa application form when you make an official request to enter or leave some countries

## B Language of forms

When you fill in [complete] a form, you will see that they often have more formal expressions. In spoken English, ideas may be expressed differently.

written	spoken
date of birth	= When were you born?
place of birth	= Where were you born?
country of origin	= Where do you come from?
marital status	= Are you single or married?
date of arrival	= When did you arrive?
date of departure	= When are you leaving? OR When did you leave?
signed	= Write your signature [the special way you have of writing your own name]

## C Curriculum vitae

If you apply for a job, you need to send a letter and a CV (**curriculum vitae** or **résumé** in American English), which should give:

- personal details [information about you such as your name, address, email address, etc.]
- details about your education and qualifications, e.g. university degree, teaching certificate, etc.
- your work experience [the jobs you have done]
- your interests [what you enjoy doing]
- skills [abilities you have learned and practised, e.g. ability to speak a foreign language]
- career aims [what you want to do in your future working life]
- names of people who will give you a reference [a letter written by someone who knows you which says if you are suitable for a particular job]

If you apply to university, they require [need; *fm!*] a **personal statement** in which you must explain why you want to go to this university; why you want to follow this particular course; details of your educational background; your skills; your interests.

## D Tips for writing a CV or personal statement

A tip is a useful piece of advice. Here are some tips for writing a CV or personal statement.

- A CV should be no longer than two pages; a personal statement no more than 45 lines of text.
- Type your CV or personal statement (**handwriting** is not suitable).
- Keep it simple. Don't make it complicated. [difficult to understand]
- Check there are no mistakes.
- Make sure the information you give is **relevant** [connected to and useful for the particular job]. For example, if you are going to be working on your own [without others], don't say that you are good at working in a team [with a group of people].

# Exercises

## 96.1 What forms do you have to complete in these situations?

- 1 You are just arriving in Britain and you come from a country outside the European Union. A landing card.....
- 2 You are applying to do an English course at a school in Britain. ....
- 3 You are going to do a Cambridge exam. ....
- 4 You want to travel to the United States this summer. ....

## 96.2 Write these sentences in more informal English.

- 1 What was your date of arrival? When did you arrive/get here?.....
- 2 What's your date of birth? .....
- 3 What's your country of origin? .....
- 4 What's your marital status? .....
- 5 What's your date of departure? .....

## 96.3 Match the words on the left with the information on the right.

- |                    |                                     |   |
|--------------------|-------------------------------------|---|
| 1 personal details | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a I would like to become a radio producer.                                |
| 2 education        | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b Trainee at Northern Radio Station, Jan–June 2007                        |
| 3 qualifications   | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c Leona Phillips, 18 Mansion Road, Beckington BE2 3RJ                     |
| 4 work experience  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d I direct plays for a theatre group, and help with a children's charity. |
| 5 career aims      | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e letter from Mr J. Tobin BA, MA (University tutor)                       |
| 6 interests        | <input type="checkbox"/>            | f BA Honours degree in Media Studies                                      |
| 7 references       | <input type="checkbox"/>            | g Kent University 2007–2010, Ainslie Grammar School 1999–2006             |

## 96.4 Answer *correct* or *incorrect*.

- 1 It's OK to make one or two mistakes in my CV. incorrect.....
- 2 I need to type my CV. ....
- 3 It's OK if my CV is three pages long. ....
- 4 My CV should be complicated. ....
- 5 For an admin job, it is relevant to say I have computer skills. ....
- 6 I can put down a driving licence as one of my skills. ....
- 7 I can put down travelling abroad as a career aim. ....

## 96.5 Replace the underlined words with a word or phrase that has a similar meaning.

- 1 Do I have to complete this form? fill in.....
- 2 Monica gave me a useful piece of advice about shopping in America. ....
- 3 I shall be alone most of the time. ....
- 4 They sent the form back to me because I didn't write my signature at the bottom. ....
- 5 Please contact us if you need any more help. ....
- 6 I think I'm good at working as part of a group of people. ....

## 96.6

### Over to you

Answer the questions. If possible, ask someone else the same questions.

- 1 Have you ever written a CV? If so, what information did it include?
- 2 Have you had to write a personal statement? If so, why?
- 3 On a CV, what would you put as your interests, your skills, and your career aims?

# Writing an essay

## A The basis of a discursive essay\*

In a discursive essay you have to express your own ideas and point of view [opinion]. It is also important to show that you understand both sides of an argument [reasons for something and reasons against something]. This means you need to understand and use different link words and phrases such as in addition, however, etc. (See Unit 93.)

\* an essay that discusses a subject

## B Expressing a point of view

Some people believe [Some people think] that no one should be sent to prison under the age of 18.

There is an argument [a reason to think] that everyone should have a university education.

### Language help

You can express a personal point of view with phrases such as **I believe/think that ...** or **It seems to me that ...** but you can also use less personal and direct ways of expressing a point of view, as in the phrases on the left. Many people think it is better not to use *In my opinion* in written essays.

## C Giving both sides of an argument

One of the advantages of being an only child is that you have more attention from your parents. However, it can be lonely without the company of brothers and sisters.

On the one hand, computers can do so many things faster than human beings. On the other (hand), some people are becoming dependent on them, which is not a good thing.

## D Comparing and contrasting\*

We often make comparisons between groups of people, or between the past and the present. Compared with/to my grandparents, I have had much more opportunity to travel abroad. In the past people didn't have computers, but nowadays there is one in almost every home. Most parts of the developed world have become richer in the last thirty years. In contrast, many countries in Africa have become much poorer.

\* saying how two things are similar and how they are different

## E Making generalisations

Sometimes a simple statement is not accurate, e.g. *Young people prefer to watch American films*. This is not true for *all* young people, so we use certain words and phrases to show that we are making a generalisation [saying that something is true most of the time or in most situations].

In general, Japanese society is more focused on groups than individuals. (*syn* on the whole) Teenagers tend to have [usually have] more freedom than in the past.

## F Cause and effect\*

Poor diet and lack of exercise are the main causes of obesity. [reasons for being very fat] Obesity is often the result of a bad diet and not enough exercise.

People don't eat the right food or get enough exercise, and consequently [because of this; *syn* as a result] they put on weight.

Poor diet can cause obesity, and this can have a bad effect on people's health.

\* how something happens, and then makes something else happen

### Language help

Don't confuse the verb *affect* and the noun *effect*.

*Pollution can affect people's breathing.*

*Pollution can have an effect on people's breathing.*



# Exercises

97.1 Match the definitions on the left with the examples on the right.

- |                                      |                                     |  |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|--|
| 1 expressing a point of view         | <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> | a Canada has a smaller population than the USA.  |
| 2 making a comparison                | <input type="checkbox"/>            | b People tend to retire at a later age.  |
| 3 describing the result of something | <input type="checkbox"/>            | c Some people believe we should never go to war.   |
| 4 showing both sides of an argument  | <input type="checkbox"/>            | d Animals die because we're cutting down the forest.   |
| 5 making a generalisation            | <input type="checkbox"/>            | e Television can make children lazy. However, there are many programmes with real educational value. |

97.2 One word is missing in each sentence. What is it, and where should it go?

- It seems <sup>to</sup> me that there is a problem. *to*
- One of the advantages studying law is that it should lead to a good career.
- It is important to give sides of the argument.
- Too much time spent in front of a television can have a bad effect children.
- People like to have freedom of choice. On the other, too much choice can be a bad thing.
- Time tends go faster as you get older.

97.3 Choose the correct word to complete the sentences. Sometimes both are correct.

- There is not enough food, and *consequently* / *on the other hand* people are dying.
- Advertising is so powerful that it *causes* / *affects* people to buy things they don't want. *In addition* / *However*, it can help them make the right choice when they buy things.
- In general* / *On the whole* people have more access to education than fifty years ago.
- Supermarkets are very convenient because you can buy almost everything you want. *On the other side* / *hand*, they are putting small shops out of business.
- The north of the country is much richer compared *with* / *to* the south.

97.4 Complete part of this essay on the advantages and disadvantages of the Internet for children.

One of the 'advantages' ..... of the Internet is that children have access to so much knowledge and information. <sup>2</sup>....., many children can access this knowledge from their own homes; they don't have to go to libraries. <sup>3</sup>....., some of the information on the Internet is unreliable and out-of-date, and there are some websites we would not want our children to look at. <sup>4</sup>....., we need to control the way that our children use the Internet, and there is certainly an <sup>5</sup>..... for much stricter controls on the websites that people are allowed to create. If we don't do this, the Internet could have a bad <sup>6</sup>..... on children.

97.5 Rewrite the sentences following the instructions in (brackets).

- People who drink and drive should go to prison. (*Show that this is a personal opinion.*)  
I believe that people who drink and drive should go to prison.
- People are conservative. (*Make this statement a generalisation.*)
- Cars should not be allowed in town centres. (*Make this opinion less personal.*)
- Children played on their bikes. Children spend most of their time in front of a computer. (*Make this a comparison between the past and the present in one sentence.*)
- Many people work longer and longer hours. They don't have time for hobbies. (*Show the connection between these two statements in one sentence.*)

# 98 Formal letters

## A A formal letter

10 Baldwyn Gardens  
Ealing  
London W5 8PR

8 August

**Dear Sir or Madam<sup>1</sup>**

**I am writing<sup>2</sup> in response to<sup>3</sup> your advertisement about job opportunities for graduates<sup>4</sup>. I have just completed a degree in Economics at Durham University, and **I would be grateful if you could<sup>5</sup> send me further details<sup>6</sup> of the graduate training schemes you mention. I am available<sup>7</sup> for interview at any time.****

**I look forward to hearing from you.<sup>8</sup>**

**Yours faithfully<sup>9</sup>**

*Nicole Drew*<sup>10</sup>

Nicole Drew

<sup>1</sup> use this beginning if you don't know the person's name

<sup>2</sup> This is a common way to start a letter.

<sup>3</sup> in reply to

<sup>4</sup> people with a university degree

<sup>5</sup> this is slightly more polite/formal than **Please could you ...**

<sup>6</sup> information about something (plural noun)

<sup>7</sup> free

<sup>8</sup> This sentence is often used to close a letter when you expect a reply.

<sup>9</sup> Use this ending if you don't know the name of the person you are writing to. If you know the name, end the letter with **Yours sincerely**, or **Kind regards**.

<sup>10</sup> Writing your name like this in a particular way is a **signature**. It is normal at the end of a formal letter to sign your name first [write your signature], and then print it, e.g. Nicole Drew.

## B Useful words and phrases

Thank you for your letter **regarding** [about] the damage to your vehicle.

I **regret to inform you** [I am sorry to say] that your **application** [official request for something] has not been successful.

I **am pleased to inform you** that your application has been successful. [I am happy to say]

I am writing to **enquire about** English courses at your school. [ask about]

You will need to **confirm the booking in writing**. [write to say that the booking is certain]

We would like to **thank you for offering your support**. [say thank you for offering your help]

We would like to **apologise for** [say sorry for] the **delay** [when something arrives later than expected]. OR **Please accept our apologies for the delay**.

I **enclose a cheque for £100**. [I am sending a cheque for £100 in the same envelope as this letter.]

# Exercises

98.1 Correct seven more mistakes in the letter.

Dear ~~sir~~ Sir or Madame

I write with response to your advertisement for trainees in yesterday's newspaper, and I would be grateful if you could send me further detail.

I look forward to hear from you.

Kind regards,

*Michael Ridley*

Michael Ridley

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

98.2 Finish the sentences.

- 1 If you don't know the person you are writing to, you start *Dear Sir or Madam* .....
- 2 If you would like more information, you ask for further .....
- 3 A common way of closing a letter is *I look forward* .....
- 4 If you don't know the person you are writing to, you end *Yours* .....
- 5 If you know the name of the person, you can end *Yours* .....
- 6 Another way of ending a letter is *Kind* .....
- 7 At the end of the letter you also write your .....

98.3 Rewrite the phrases and sentences in more formal English, starting with the words given. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1 Thanks for the letter about the fire.        | Thank you for your letter <i>regarding the fire</i> ..... |
| 2 I'm sorry to tell you ...                    | I .....   |
| 3 I'm happy to tell you ...                    | I am .....  |
| 4 Are you free on Wednesday?                   | Are you .....   |
| 5 I want to ask about the dates of the course. | I would like to .....                                     |
| 6 We want to say sorry for the delay.          | Please accept .....                                       |
| 7 Please send me the details.                  | I would be .....  |
| 8 Could you say that's definite in a letter?   | Could you .....   |
| 9 I'm sending a copy of my CV.                 | I .....   |

98.4 Complete the letter.

1 *Dear* ..... Mr Wilkinson,

I am 2 ..... in 3 ..... to your letter of 10 February 4 ..... the delivery of the Maxwell dining table and four chairs that you ordered.

In the middle of January there was a fire at the factory and it had to close down for almost a week. The recent heavy snow has caused further problems, and coming so soon after the busy Christmas period, we 5 ..... to inform you that there are 6 ..... of up to four weeks on most orders.

We promise to do everything we can to speed up deliveries, but in the meantime we would like to 7 ..... for the obvious inconvenience this has caused.

Yours 8 .....

*James Porter*

James Porter  
Customer services manager

www.irLanguage.com



## A An email

- <sup>1</sup> We can begin an informal email or letter with **Hi Beth**, **Hello Beth**, or **Dear Beth**.
- <sup>2</sup> a funny person
- <sup>3</sup> planning or intending to
- <sup>4</sup> make contact, e.g. by phone, email or text
- <sup>5</sup> want (to see) *infml*
- <sup>6</sup> say hello to Conrad from me; also **send my regards** to Conrad. With family members and very close friends we also say **give/send my love** to.
- <sup>7</sup> again, as before (here it is used to say thank you one more time)
- <sup>8</sup> We can end an informal email/letter to a close friend or family member with **Love** or **Lots of love**. We also often use **Best wishes** or **All the best** when we end a letter or email to a friend.



## B A letter

8 Daniel Street  
Bath BA1 2PH

Dear Rob

I know it's **ages<sup>1</sup> since<sup>2</sup>** I last got in touch, but I wanted to **let you know<sup>3</sup>** that I'm hoping to spend a few days in Birmingham in two weeks' **time<sup>4</sup>** - **actually<sup>5</sup>** just before your birthday. I thought we could **get together<sup>6</sup>** and go out for a meal. And if it's OK with you, perhaps Mark could **join us<sup>7</sup>** as well.

Anyway<sup>8</sup>, it would be great to see you. If you haven't got my mobile number, it's 07732 268024.

Best wishes,  
Sean

## Language help

We can use **actually** to give more exact information, as in the letter (*syn in fact*). We also use it a great deal in spoken English to say something which is surprising or different from what you expect, e.g. He looks Italian, but **actually** he's not. (*Syn in fact*) **Actually** does not mean *at the moment*, e.g. *The land is **currently** for sale* (NOT *The land is **actually** for sale*).

- <sup>1</sup> a long time
- <sup>2</sup> from a time in the past until now
- <sup>3</sup> tell you
- <sup>4</sup> two weeks from now
- <sup>5</sup> (see Language help)
- <sup>6</sup> meet for a social reason
- <sup>7</sup> come with us
- <sup>8</sup> used to change the subject or end a conversation/letter

# Exercises

## 99.1 Find five more phrases using words from the box.

in	give	be	once	best	let	in	to	again	you
week's	touch	my	a	regards	time	wishes	know		

be in touch .....

.....

.....

## 99.2 Write these phrases in different ways. The phrases can be similar but don't repeat exactly the same words.

- |                            |         |          |
|----------------------------|---------|----------|
| 1 Hello Julie              | Hi..... | Julie    |
| 2 Hello Mark               | .....   | Mark     |
| 3 Give my love to Patricia | .....   | Patricia |
| 4 Love, Trudie             | .....   | , Trudie |
| 5 Best wishes, Sam         | .....   | , Sam    |

## 99.3 Rewrite the sentences using the word in capitals. Keep a similar meaning.

- |  |       |                                 |
|--|-------|---------------------------------|
| 1 Do you want to come with us?         | JOIN  | Do you want to <u>join us</u> ? |
| 2 Do you want to go?                   | FANCY | Do you .....                    |
| 3 I'll write soon.                     | TOUCH | I'll .....                      |
| 4 It looks new, but actually it isn't. | FACT  | It looks new, but .....         |
| 5 I'll tell you as soon as possible.   | LET   | I'll .....                      |
| 6 I'm going three weeks from now.      | IN    | I'm going .....                 |
| 7 Jamie is very funny.                 | LAUGH | Jamie is .....                  |
| 8 Let's meet for lunch.                | GET   | Let's .....                     |
| 9 I haven't written for ages.          | SINCE | It's .....                      |

## 99.4 Complete the email with words from the box.

touch	join	fact	together	hoping	in
let	since	give	ages	actually	anyway

Inbox   New   Reply   Reply all   Forward   Delete   Junk   Options

Junk   Drafts   Sent   Deleted   Manage folders

Dear Gilberto

I haven't been in <sup>1</sup>..... touch..... for <sup>2</sup>..... – I'm sorry about that. In <sup>3</sup>....., I've been really busy <sup>4</sup>..... I last wrote because I've got a new job in TV – <sup>5</sup>..... it's with the BBC. I'm doing research for various documentary programmes and I'm <sup>6</sup>..... to go to Brazil <sup>7</sup>..... three months' time. If so, I'll obviously get in touch. It would be great if we could get <sup>8</sup>....., and maybe Filipe could <sup>9</sup>..... us if he's free.

<sup>10</sup>....., I'll write again soon. I hope things are going well with you, and <sup>11</sup>..... me know when the baby arrives. And, of course, <sup>12</sup>..... my love to Teresa.

All the best,  
Jonny

# Abbreviations

## A Letters or words?

Most abbreviations are spoken as individual letters.

EU	European Union
UN	United Nations
PM	Prime Minister
MP	Member of Parliament
BBC	British Broadcasting Corporation
ID	identification, e.g. Do you have an ID card?
PC	personal computer
CV	curriculum vitae [a history of your job experience]
ISP	Internet Service Provider



Occasionally abbreviations are spoken as words, e.g. AIDS /eɪdz/ and PIN /pɪn/ [personal identification number, especially used with a bank/credit card]

### Language help

We use the verb **stand for** to ask about the meaning of an abbreviation.

A: What does EU stand for?

B: European Union.

## B Written forms only

Some abbreviations are written forms only, but pronounced as full words.

Mr Scott [mɪstər skɒt]	St Mark's Church [seɪnt mɑːk's tʃɜːtʃ]
Mrs Bryant [mɪsɪz braɪənt]	Dean St [diːn streɪt]
Dr Chapman [dɒktər tʃæpmən]	

## C Abbreviations as part of the language

Some abbreviations (from Latin) are used as part of the language.

Latin	abbreviation	pronunciation	meaning
et cetera	etc.	/et 'setərə/	and so on
exempli gratia	e.g.	/i:'dʒi:/	for example
id est	i.e.	/aɪ'ɪ:/	that's to say / in other words

## D Shortened words

Some common English words can be shortened, especially in spoken English. In some cases, the shorter form is more common and the full form sounds quite formal, e.g. refrigerator, influenza, gymnasium and veterinary surgeon.

phone (telephone)	fridge (refrigerator)
maths (mathematics)	exam (examination)
board (blackboard)	plane (aeroplane)
case (suitcase)	photo (photograph)
ad/advert (advertisement)	flu (influenza) [illness like a cold but more serious]
gym (gymnasium)	lab (laboratory) [special room where scientists work]
bike (bicycle)	sales rep [sales representative; <i>syn</i> salesperson]
TV/telly (television)	vet (veterinary surgeon)
paper (newspaper)	



# Exercises

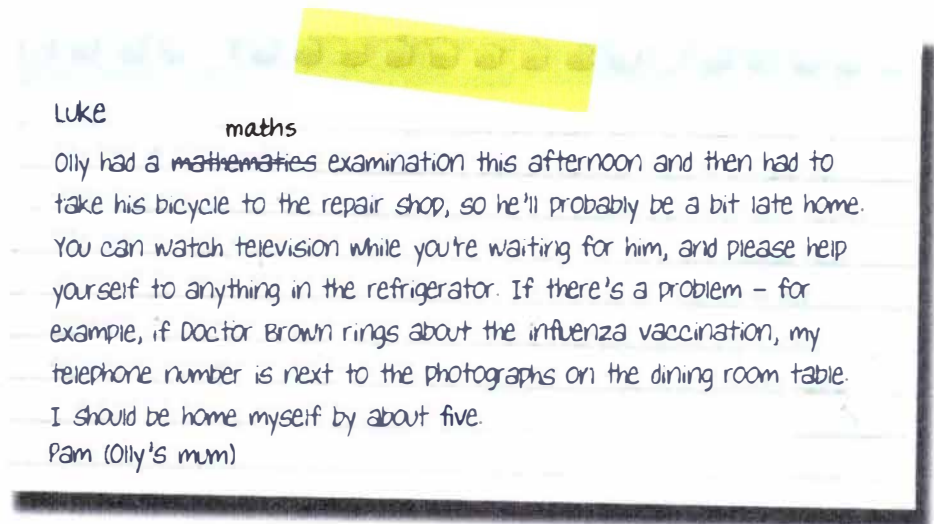
## 100.1 Are these sentences correct or incorrect? If a sentence is incorrect, change it to make it correct.

- 1 ISP stands for Internet Service Player. Incorrect. It's Internet Service Provider.
- 2 BBC stands for British Broadcasting Company. ....
- 3 MP stands for Minister of Parliament. ....
- 4 PC stands for personal computer. ....
- 5 UN stands for Unified Nations. ....
- 6 ID stands for identification. ....
- 7 CV stands for curricular vitae. ....

## 100.2 What abbreviations in written English are often used for these words or phrases?

- |               |           |                  |       |
|---------------|-----------|------------------|-------|
| 1 Mister      | <u>Mr</u> | 5 in other words | ..... |
| 2 for example | .....     | 6 Saint          | ..... |
| 3 and so on   | .....     | 7 Doctor         | ..... |
| 4 Street      | .....     |                  |       |

## 100.3 Rewrite this note, making it more informal by using short forms where possible.



## 100.4 Complete the sentences with suitable words, shortened words or abbreviations.

- 1 It was a warm day, so I put the milk and butter in the fridge.
- 2 He didn't want to walk, so he went on his .....
- 3 If you go to Mediterranean islands, ..... Sardinia or Corsica, it's a good idea to hire a car.
- 4 If you want to apply for the job, you'll need to send your ..... with a letter of application.
- 5 The dog was sick, so we had to take her to the .....
- 6 In that shop on the corner you can get books, pens, writing paper, .....
- 7 I took my large bag with me on the plane, but I didn't have a .....
- 8 When I sold my CDs, I put an ..... in the paper and had three replies the same day.
- 9 If you use the cashpoint, remember you'll need your ..... number.
- 10 What does MP ..... for?
- 11 We did some experiments in the chemistry .....
- 12 My uncle is a sales .....

## 100.5 Here are some more abbreviations. What does each one stand for, and where will you see them?

- |           |            |            |
|-----------|------------|------------|
| PTO ..... | RSVP ..... | asap ..... |
| IMO ..... | DOB .....  | PS .....   |

# Answer key

## Unit 1

1.1 *Your own answers*

1.2 *Your own answers*

1.3 *Your own answers*

1.4 2 temporary 3 cruel/unkind 4 rough 5 exit/way out 6 alive 7 refuse

1.5 2 argument 4 choose 6 difference; differ  
3 revision 5 expansion 7 communication; communicative

1.6 *Your own answers*

## Unit 2

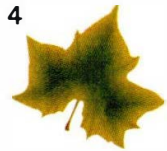
2.1	food	garden	numbers
	diet, lay the table, flour, raw, butcher, frozen, e.g. <i>frozen peas</i>	branch, dig, ground, leaf, butterfly, frozen, e.g. <i>the ground is frozen</i>	count, add up, minus, thousand, zero

2.2 *Possible answers:*

2 translation

3 a person who sells meat

4



5 translation

6 put plates, knives, forks, etc. on a table before a meal

7 translation is probably the easiest way

8 six minus four is two ( $6 - 4 = 2$ )

2.3 2 (synonym) A synonym for *awful* is *dreadful*.

3 (opposite) The opposite of *necessary* is *unnecessary*.

4 (word partner and part of speech) You *translate* something *into* another language; the noun is *translation*.

5 (meanings) *Tip* has two meanings: a piece of advice, and money you give a waiter for serving you.

6 (grammar and part of speech) *Enjoy* is followed by an *-ing* form; the noun is *enjoyment*, the adjective is *enjoyable*.

2.4 *Your own answers*

## Unit 3

3.1 2 really 5 clothes 8 beautiful  
3 unfortunately 6 comfortable 9 unbelievable  
4 especially 7 accommodation 10 necessary

3.2 1 knee (k) 2 comb (b) 3 castle (t) 4 salmon (l) 5 receipt (p)

3.3 2 amount 3 behave 4 official 5 emphasise 6 relating to

- 3.4 2 The 'z' spelling is usual in American English, but both are possible in British English.  
 3 an adverb  
 4 uncountable  
 5 on  
 6 She's an old friend; he's my best friend; you make friends with people. You may also have found these common word partners (a close friend, a friend of mine)
- 3.5 1 definition 3 2 definition 1 3 definition 4 4 definition 2

## Unit 4

### 4.1

parts of speech	punctuation	pronunciation
<i>noun</i> , adjective, adverb, preposition	comma, question mark, full stop	phonemic symbol, stress, syllable

- 4.2 2 in Seville (preposition) 7 wonderful **hotel**/place (noun)  
 3 took/got a train (verb) 8 to Spain (preposition)  
 4 a beautiful city (indefinite article) 9 never stays (adverb)  
 5 expensive hotel (adjective) 10 if I have (pronoun)  
 6 of money (preposition)

- 4.3 2 a capital letter 7 phrasal verbs  
 3 a full stop 8 punctuation  
 4 a question mark 9 with (phonemic) symbols  
 5 a comma 10 late  
 6 uncountable noun

- 4.4 'English 2 in'formal 3 'opposite 3 'syllable 3  
 de'cide 2 'adjective 3 edu'cation 4 pronun'ciation 5

- 4.5 2 cheaply; dangerously 3 find 4 un- 5 -ness

## Unit 5

- 5.1 2 Thai 7 Arabic  
 3 Spanish 8 German  
 4 Israel 9 England/the UK, the USA, Australia  
 5 China 10 (Swiss) German, French, Italian  
 6 Portuguese

- 5.2 2 Asia / the Far East 5 the Caribbean  
 3 the Middle East 6 South America  
 4 Europe

- 5.3 Chinese; Japan; Portuguese; Egyptian; Australia; Arabic; Saudi Arabia; Scandinavia

- 5.4 2 Turkey 3 South Korea 4 Russia 5 Argentina 6 Greece

- 5.5 2 Germans 5 Brazilians 7 The Swiss  
 3 the Japanese 6 the British 8 Russians  
 4 Israelis

### 5.6 Possible answers:

- 1 I'm French.  
 2 The capital of France is Paris. I think the population of France is about 60 million.  
 3 French.  
 4 I can speak Italian and English.  
 5 I have visited Germany, Spain, Italy and the UK.  
 6 I don't know the Far East, so I would like to visit China and Japan.





- 8.2** 3 different                      6 different                      9 different  
 4 different                      7 same                      10 different  
 5 same                      8 different

- 8.3** 2 wild    3 cage    4 insects    5 rare    6 protect

- 8.4** 2 Monkeys                      4 Whales                      6 Snakes                      8 Parrots  
 3 Camels                      5 Giraffes                      7 Elephants

**8.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 Yes. I've got a dog called Max.
- 2 No.
- 3 I don't like seeing birds in cages, but I can understand why we need to keep some wild animals in zoos.
- 4 I'm not frightened of animals, but I don't like it when birds get inside the house and fly around the rooms; it's scary!

**Unit 9**

- 9.1** DOWN: heel, knee, chest, ankle, chin  
 ACROSS: cheek, hip, elbow, lip(s), skin

- 9.2** 2 c    3 a    4 f    5 b    6 d

- 9.3** 2 lips    3 chin    4 shoulder    5 waist    6 cheek    7 neck    8 chest

**9.4** *Possible answers:*

- |   |                        |
|---|------------------------|
| 2 running   | 6 when they mean 'no'  |
| 3 when someone says something funny                         | 7 when they mean 'yes' |
| 4 when they see someone they know or say goodbye to someone | 8 when they're sad     |
| 5 when they have a cold                                     | 9 when they're tired   |

**Unit 10**

- 10.1** 2 looking    3 hair    4 shoulders    5 smart    6 height    7 dark

- 10.2** Your **height** is how **tall** you are.  
 Your **weight** is how much you weigh.  
**Roughly** and **approximately** are similar in meaning.  
**Medium** and **average** are similar in meaning.  
**Broad** and **narrow** are opposite in meaning.  
**Wavy** and **curly** are similar in meaning, and describe hair.

- 10.3** 2 gorgeous                      5 pretty                      8 roughly/approximately  
 3 attractive/handsome                      6 overweight                      9 tallish  
 4 athletic                      7 ordinary

**10.4** *Possible answers from a man:*

- 1 I'm about one metre 78.
- 2 It's dark brown and quite wavy.
- 3 My girlfriend is about one metre 68. She's very attractive in my opinion, and she's got short blonde hair, which is straight. I don't know how much she weighs; I wouldn't ask her that.

## Unit 11

11.1

positive	negative
nice	unpleasant
generous	mean
sensible	silly
hard-working	lazy
calm	nervous

11.2 2 unfriendly 3 unpleasant 4 impatient 5 dishonest 6 unreliable

11.3 2 mean 5 shy 8 calm  
3 unreliable 6 sensible 9 creative  
4 patient 7 serious 10 talented

11.4 2 nervous 5 humour 8 character  
3 wish 6 clever/intelligent 9 stupid  
4 lazy 7 trust 10 kind

11.5 *Possible answers:*

I think I am quite positive (2), very reliable (1), not very confident (3), a bit lazy (4), have quite a good sense of humour (2) and am quite impatient (5).

I would like to be creative and more patient; I would hate to be mean.

## Unit 12

12.1 Nouns: jealousy, confusion, disappointment, anxiety  
Adjectives: proud, curious, emotional

12.2 2 f 3 d 4 b 5 a 6 e

12.3 scared 6 cheerful 5 upset 3 confused 2 depressed 4

12.4 2 feelings/emotions 6 mood  
3 energetic 7 hopeful  
4 effect 8 frightened/scared  
5 stress

12.5 *Possible answers:*

1 I'm not sure that colour does, but the weather certainly affects me. I feel more positive when the sun is shining, and rain makes me depressed.

2 I think I suffer from stress sometimes at work, or if I have too many things on my mind.

3 I don't think my mood changes much from day to day.

4 I feel more energetic in the evening.

## Unit 13

13.1 2 niece 5 brother-in-law 8 only  
3 nephew 6 elder  
4 sister-in-law 7 cousin

13.2 2 Remarry 6 Twins  
3 Relatives/Relations 7 Mate  
4 best 8 Friendship  
5 old 9 stepfather



13.3 2 married 3 altogether 4 since 5 get on (well) 6 ex

13.4 Possible answers for Laura, aged 20:

- 1 I have an elder sister called Rosie.
- 2 Yes, very well.
- 3 No, not especially close, but we all get on well.
- 4 My cousin Daniel; he got married last year.
- 5 Anita.
- 6 I've known her for nine years.
- 7 We started secondary school at the same time.

## Unit 14

14.1 2 early twenties 5 middle-aged 8 an adult  
3 mid-thirties 6 elderly 9 teens  
4 teenager 7 retired 10 toddler

14.2 2 True 5 False. At first life wasn't easy.  
3 False. Her parents were very strict. 6 False. She managed to get a job in Cardiff.  
4 True

14.3 2 in the end I did it 8 managed to pass my exams  
3 roughly/about my age 9 stayed out late  
4 nearly thirty now 10 let me wear what I liked  
5 strict 11 childhood  
6 allowed to stay up and watch TV 12 retired  
7 brought up in Scotland

14.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I was brought up in a town called Dartmouth.
- 2 It's on the coast and I remember going to the beach a lot with my family and friends.
- 3 My mum was quite strict, but not my dad. They didn't let me swim in certain places because they thought it was dangerous.
- 4 Up to the age of 17, I had to be home on the last bus, which was about 11:15. When I learnt to drive, I stayed out later than that.

## Unit 15

15.1 I went out with Simon. 3  
We got married. 5  
I got pregnant three months later. 8  
We got engaged. 4  
I got to know Simon. 2  
Our son was born just after our first anniversary. 9  
We went on our honeymoon. 7  
I met Simon at a party. 1  
We had a big reception. 6

15.2 2 date 4 pregnant 6 bride; (bride)groom  
3 marriage 5 anniversary 7 give

15.3 1 couple  
2 to know; wedding  
3 ceremony; honeymoon  
4 left; wrong; his own; divorced / a divorce

#### 15.4 Possible answers:

- 1 I was 14 or 15 and I went to a party with a girl called Yvonne.
- 2 Yes, it was at university when I was about 20. Her name was Liz and we were together for almost three years.
- 3 The last wedding I went to was my cousin's, who got married to a man I had never met.
- 4 I went to a friend's 30<sup>th</sup> birthday party.

### Unit 16

#### 16.1 Possible answers:

have a late night / an early night / a sleep / a wash / a shower / a bath / a snack / a light lunch  
do the washing / the ironing / the housework / the shopping

#### 16.2 2 h 3 e 4 c 5 f 6 b 7 a 8 d

- |                                 |   |
|---------------------------------|---|
| 2 usually wakes me up           | 7 don't bother with a full meal                   |
| 3 have a snack in the afternoon | 8 have cereal for breakfast                       |
| 4 go out on Friday              | 9 housework; fortunately/luckily I have a husband |
| 5 friends come round            | 10 I try to reply to them straight away           |
| 6 eat out at the weekend        |   |

- |           |              |            |
|-----------|--------------|------------|
| 2 instead | 4 early      | 6 takeaway |
| 3 stay in | 5 come round | 7 chat     |

#### 16.5 Possible answers:

##### Similar

- 1 I usually have a light lunch.
- 2 I have my main meal in the evening.
- 3 I sometimes have a bath instead of a shower in the winter.

##### Different

- 1 I usually wake up before 7.00 am.
- 2 I have a shower in the morning.
- 3 I do my own washing because I don't have a cleaner.

### Unit 17

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 2 False. They used to live in the centre of town. | 7 False. A French couple live upstairs. |
| 3 False. They rent their flat.                    | 8 False. The parents own a cottage.     |
| 4 True  | 9 True                                  |
| 5 False. They live on the second floor.           | 10 True                                 |
| 6 True  |   |

- 17.2 Positive: air conditioning, character, charming  
Negative: dark, no central heating

#### 17.3 2 a lift 3 a balcony 4 a cottage 5 front door 6 steps

- |                  |             |               |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|
| 2 on; downstairs | 5 outskirts | 8 floor; lift |
| 3 space          | 6 balcony   | 9 moved       |
| 4 location       | 7 heat      | 10 light      |

#### 17.5 Possible answers:

I live in a house, which I own, and it's near the centre of town. I've lived here for seven years now. I used to live in a house in London, but I moved because I didn't need to be in London for my job. I've got central heating where I live, but I haven't got air conditioning or a balcony.

## Unit 18

- 18.1** 2 in the microwave      4 in the washing machine      6 in a cupboard  
3 in the oven      5 in the dishwasher (or sink)      7 in the freezer

- 18.2** 2 sink, in the kitchen  
3 curtains, in the living room or the bedroom  
4 cushions, in the living room  
5 kettle, in the kitchen  
6 washbasin, in the bathroom  
7 carpet, in the living room or the bedrooms  
8 pillow, in the bedroom  
9 washing machine, in the utility room or the kitchen  
10 cooker, in the kitchen  
11 armchair, in the living room  
12 tiles, in any room, though more likely in the kitchen or bathroom

- 18.3** 2 wooden      5 share; own      8 blanket; duvet  
3 choice      6 spare      9 en suite  
4 study      7 tap(s)      10 utility

**18.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 tiles    2 tiles    3 carpet and a couple of rugs    4 curtains    5 a duvet

**18.5** *Possible answers:*

- I like big sofas with lots of cushions.  
I prefer a wooden floor with rugs.  
I have no preference – it depends on the blinds and the curtains.  
I prefer a duvet.  
I must have two pillows. I can't stand only one pillow.

## Unit 19

- 19.1** 2 spill/spilt/spilt      5 run out/ran out/run out  
3 burn/burnt/burnt      6 tear/tore/torn  
4 fall over/fell over/fallen over      7 hit/hit/hit

- 19.2** 2 h    3 f    4 g    5 c    6 a    7 b    8 e

- 19.3** 2 over      5 hopeless      8 hit  
3 clear      6 mood      9 fell  
4 remove      7 slipped (fell over is also possible)      10 worse

**19.4** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I dropped it on the floor.  
3 I fell over. / I slipped and fell over.  
4 There's something wrong with the TV.  
5 I forgot it. / I left it at home.  
6 It isn't working properly.  
7 It's out of order.

**19.5** *Possible answers:*

- I occasionally drop cups or glasses, usually when I'm drying them.  
We run out of bread or milk quite regularly, and I have to go out and buy some.  
I fell over in the snow last week, but I don't usually fall over very much.  
I sometimes forget people's names, which is embarrassing.  
I occasionally burn food.  
I don't spill things very often.  
I always leave my glasses lying around and then I can't find them when I need them.



## Unit 20

- 20.1 2 No 3 No 4 No 5 Yes 6 Yes 7 Yes 8 No 9 Yes 10 Yes
- 20.2 2 a bank loan 3 fee(s) 4 cash 5 rent 6 cashpoint 7 currency
- 20.3 2 She wasted the money. 5 He charged us £25.  
3 I can't afford to go. 6 I owe a lot of money.  
4 We could hire a car. 7 I always check my account carefully.
- 20.4 2 account 3 amount 4 earn 5 owe 6 pay (them) back 7 accommodation

### 20.5 Possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I've had an account for about fifteen years.  
2 I don't check my account very often. (see next answer)  
3 I get money from a cashpoint about once a week, and I always ask for a receipt so that I know how much is in my account.  
4 I had a bank loan to buy my first car – that's all.  
5 Yes, I'm saving up for a holiday.  
6 Yes, I rent a flat with a friend. We had to pay a deposit of one month's rent.

## Unit 21

- 21.1 3 different 4 different 5 same 6 different 7 same 8 different
- 21.2 3 a 4 a 5 a 6 – 7 – 8 a 9 – 10 a
- 21.3 2 sick 5 bleeding 8 serious  
3 hurts 6 suffer  
4 bandage 7 aches
- 21.4 people have heart attacks  
surgeons perform operations  
tablets/pills are common forms of medicine  
hepatitis affects the liver  
people have sore throats

### 21.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I take tablets such as aspirin.  
2 I hardly ever get a cough or sore throat.  
3 No, I haven't been a patient.  
4 I had to go into hospital for a minor operation, but I didn't have to stay overnight.  
5 We have various tablets for pain, e.g. paracetamol or Ibuprofen. We usually have different medicines for colds and flu, or for stomach problems.

## Unit 22

22.1	Items of clothing	Jewellery	Parts of clothing
	boots, top, jumper, scarf, cap, tights	earrings, ring, bracelet, necklace	button, zip, pocket, sleeve, collar

- 22.2 2 The first woman is wearing a necklace; the second isn't.  
3 The first woman has four pockets on her jacket; the second has two.  
4 The first woman has two buttons on her jacket sleeve; the second has one.  
5 The second woman is wearing earrings; the first isn't.  
6 The second woman is wearing a bracelet; the first isn't.
- 22.3 2 in 5 suit 8 undid  
3 dressed 6 up 9 rucksack  
4 on 7 into 10 dressed

**22.4** *Possible answers for an English woman:*

- 1 I always wear earrings, and I sometimes wear a ring and a necklace. I don't wear a bracelet very often.
- 2 I think dark colours suit me best.
- 3 I prefer to wear casual clothes, but I have to wear smart clothes for work.
- 4 I hope I look quite stylish, but I'm not sure I do.
- 5 I never wear a cap, but I sometimes wear a hat.
- 6 I often wear T-shirts, but I never wear trainers.

*Possible answers for an English boy:*

- 1 I hardly ever wear a suit.
- 2 I don't like wearing ties – but I have to wear one for school.
- 3 I almost always undo the top button on my shirt – unless I'm cold.
- 4 I always change into jeans after school.
- 5 I don't wear a cap or a hat.
- 6 I wear T-shirts a lot, and I always wear trainers.

**Unit 23**

**23.1** 2 different 3 different 4 similar 5 different 6 different 7 similar

**23.2** 2 fashion 5 good on you 8 dresses  
 3 with your skirt 6 fit  
 4 got on 7 tight

**23.3** 2 reasonable 5 changing room 8 serve  
 3 wardrobe 6 designer labels / designers  
 4 fashionable / in fashion 7 shop assistant

**23.4** 2 try 5 fit 8 size  
 3 changing 6 tight 9 suited/suits  
 4 served 7 shame/pity 10 leave

**23.5** *Possible answers for a young man:*

I occasionally shop with a friend but usually on my own.  
 I always try on shoes and trousers before I buy them, but not shirts.  
 I sometimes buy clothes that don't suit me, but that's just a mistake. I never buy clothes just because they're fashionable.  
 If I buy trousers, I don't usually buy a shirt to go with it. But if I buy a jacket, I might buy a shirt to go with it.  
 My wardrobe does have quite a few things that I hardly ever wear.  
 I don't buy designer labels unless they're reduced in the sales; the price has to be reasonable.  
 I like casual clothes. I don't really care whether they're fashionable.  
 I'm not always happy with what I've got on, but if I'm honest, I don't think about it much.

**Unit 24**

**24.1** 2 True  
 3 True  
 4 False. Expensive items are on the middle shelves.  
 5 True  
 6 True  
 7 True  
 8 False. Sometimes you buy more than you need and throw some of it away.

**24.2** con'venient 'checkout 'entrance a 'refund re'place 'item

- 24.3** 2 shopping centres                    5 shopping centres  
 3 street markets                        6 both, but probably more true of shopping centres  
 4 street markets

- 24.4** 2 makes; replace                    5 offer                                    8 atmosphere  
 3 throw                                    6 entrance                              9 likely  
 4 queue                                    7 range

**24.5** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I go to a supermarket once a week. I don't like shopping there, but it is convenient.
- 2 I hardly ever go to shopping centres. I don't like them very much.
- 3 I go to a small food market once a week. I really like it because you get to know the people who have the stalls and they often sell things which are a bit different.
- 4 I don't often haggle for things; I'm not very good at it.
- 5 I take things back to shops if there is something wrong with them, and usually I get a refund.

**Unit 25**

- 25.1** 1 vegetable: *pea(s)*                    fruit: peach, pear, pineapple  
 2 vegetable: garlic                        fruit: grapes  
 3 vegetable: mushroom                    fruit: melon  
 4 vegetable: spinach                        fruit: strawberry  
 5 vegetable: onion                         fruit: olive

**25.2** lettuce/chicken, aubergine/tomato, onion/mushroom, prawn/pork, salmon/lamb

- 25.3** 2 cabbage, the others are all used in salad  
 3 crab, the others are all meat  
 4 peach, the others are all vegetables  
 5 broccoli, the others are all types of seafood  
 6 chicken, the others are all vegetables

**25.4** *These are the most likely answers:*

melon: NO    grapes: YES    peaches: YES or SOMETIMES  
 pears: YES or SOMETIMES    lemon: NO

- 25.5** 1 lamb; veal; pork                    4 a vegetarian  
 2 lettuce                                    5 bunch  
 3 oil and vinegar (oil and lemon is also possible)

**25.6** *Possible answers for the UK:*

- 1 Strawberries and pears are more common than pineapple.
- 2 Lamb and beef are more expensive than pork or chicken.
- 3 lettuce, tomato and cucumber; sometimes onion and red pepper as well
- 4 aubergine, red pepper, pineapple, melons, grapes or peaches
- 5 veal
- 6 Peaches are my favourite fruit. / Lamb is my favourite meat.

**Unit 26**

**26.1** fry, grill, roast, bake, barbecue

**26.2** raw – door; sour – hour; oven – love; pie – lie; saucepan – four

- 26.3** 2 ~~cooker~~ cook                        5 ~~good in~~ good at  
 3 ~~fry pan~~ frying pan                    6 ~~tastes~~ flavours  
 4 ~~sour~~ bitter





## Unit 29

- 29.1** 2 ride                      5 run                      8 fares  
3 get in                      6 fly                      9 driver  
4 journey                    7 missed                10 off; stop
- 29.2** 2 van                        4 lorry (also truck)    6 bicycle/bike  
3 motorbike                5 coach
- 29.3** 2 journey                  5 reliable                8 complaining  
3 convenient; away       6 queue                  9 season  
4 corner                    7 return                 10 platform

### 29.4 Possible answers:

- 1 Generally yes.
- 2 Prices vary a great deal in England. Sometimes a return is twice the price of a single, but sometimes it is not much more than a single.
- 3 Where I live is very convenient for the train station if I need to travel out of town.
- 4 No, I haven't got a season ticket, but they can often save you a lot of money.
- 5 I don't take taxis very often; only if I need to get home late at night.
- 6 I usually ride my bike once a week.

## Unit 30

- 30.1** 2 pedestrians              4 pedestrian crossing   6 brake  
3 pavement                5 (road) junction      7 road sign
- 30.2** 2 lane                        5 motorway              8 (road) junction  
3 traffic light(s)         6 bridge  
4 overtaking               7 bend
- 30.3** 2 lost                        4 via                      6 ended  
3 direct                    5 way                    7 turning
- 30.4** 2 accident                 5 speed                  8 damaged  
3 approaching             6 swerve                9 injuries  
4 overtake                 7 crashed

### 30.5 Possible answers for England:

- 1 Yes, it's 70 mph. (about 115 kph)
- 2 There are usually three lanes.
- 3 Yes, they do.
- 4 Not very often, but it sometimes happens if the road is very narrow.

## Unit 31

- 31.1** 2 Mind the step  
3 Admission free  
4 Out of order  
5 No vacancies/entry/exit  
6 Do not lean out of the window / leave bags unattended  
7 Please queue other side  
8 Mind your head  
9 Please do not disturb / Please do not feed the animals  
10 Keep off the grass  
11 Keep right/left  
12 Silence examination in progress

- 31.2** 2 On a vending machine (a machine selling drinks and snacks)  
 3 In a zoo  
 4 In a hotel window  
 5 At a theatre  
 6 In a bank or post office  
 7 On a parcel
- 31.3** 2 Do not leave bags unattended      6 Mind your head  
 3 Please do not disturb                      7 Admission free  
 4 No parking                                      8 SILENCE – examination in progress  
 5 Do not lean out of the window
- 31.4** No exit, Silence – examination in progress, out of order, keep right, mind the step, no entry
- 31.5** *Possible signs in English you might see are:*  
 English spoken here  
 Entrance [you go in here]  
 Flat to let [advertising a flat that you can rent]  
 Cyclists dismount here [people on bicycles must get off their bikes here]  
 No through road [there is no way out for cars at the other end of this road]

### Unit 32

- 32.1** 2 c    3 h    4 a    5 f    6 d    7 e    8 b
- 32.2** 2 to look up the meaning of words  
 3 a plug  
 4 to rub something out  
 5 because you haven't got one (or someone else hasn't got one)  
 6 to highlight something  
 7 to sharpen a pencil  
 8 to measure something, or perhaps to underline something
- 32.3** 2 How do you pronounce 'swap'?    4 How do you use the word 'swap' in a sentence?  
 3 How do you spell 'swap'?
- 32.4** 2 Could you turn up the CD player?  
 3 Could you lend me a dictionary?  
 4 Could you repeat that, please?  
 5 Could you explain the difference between *lend* and *borrow*?  
 6 Could I borrow your ruler?  
 7 Could we swap places?
- 32.5** *Your own answers*

### Unit 33

- 33.1** 2 f    3 g    4 b    5 h    6 d    7 c    8 a
- 33.2** 2 primary    3 secondary    4 take; leave    5 stay    6 go (on)
- 33.3** 2 timetable    3 into    4 both are correct    5 break    6 break up  
 7 get    8 dress (you can wear what you want = you can dress the way you want)
- 33.4** 2 wear    3 male; female    4 trouble    5 punished    6 atmosphere
- 33.5** *Your own answers*

### Unit 34

- 34.1** 2 both are correct    3 up    4 revise for    5 do    6 both are correct    7 failed



- 34.2** 2 grade 5 work 8 hard work  
 3 candidates 6 increase; basic 9 willing  
 4 essay 7 vowels; consonants

- 34.3** 2 revision 3 my best 4 exam preparation 5 things wrong 6 ear for language

- 34.4** 2 accent 4 accurate 6 through  
 3 fluent 5 understood 7 well

**34.5** *Your own answers*

**Unit 35**

- 35.1** 2 engineering 3 medicine 4 economics 5 law 6 architecture

- 35.2** I did a degree course. 5  
 I passed with good grades. 2  
 I got a Master's. 8  
 I did a postgraduate course. 7  
 I did my final exams at school. 1  
 I became an undergraduate. 4  
 I got a place at university. 3  
 I got a degree in business studies. 6

- 35.3** 2 False. You have to get good grades in your school exams.  
 3 True  
 4 False. Most degree courses last three years.  
 5 True  
 6 False. If you are successful, you get a degree.  
 7 False. Students studying for their first degree are called undergraduates.  
 8 False. Science students do not write a lot of essays. (They spend their time in laboratories.) Arts students have to write a lot of essays.  
 9 True  
 10 False. If you study arts subjects you work in a library. / If you study science subjects you work in a laboratory.

- 35.4** 2 degree 3 went on 4 lasted 5 into 6 research 7 qualification

**35.5** *Your own answers*

**Unit 36**

- 36.1** 2 d 3 f 4 e 5 a 6 b

- 36.2** 2 sailor 6 accountant  
 3 mechanic 7 plumber, carpenter, electrician, builder, mechanic and surgeon  
 4 vet 8 doctor, surgeon, dentist, vet, pilot, electrician  
 5 pilot or builder 9 police officer, soldier, sailor, firefighter, pilot, doctor, vet

- 36.3** 2 A vet treats animals.  
 3 An architect designs buildings.  
 4 An electrician installs and repairs electrical things.  
 5 A lawyer represents people with legal problems.  
 6 A surgeon operates on people.  
 7 A mechanic repairs cars.  
 8 A dentist looks after people's teeth.  
 9 An engineer plans the building of roads, bridges, etc.

- 36.4** 2 Really? When did he join the navy? 4 Really? When did she join the army?  
 3 Really? When did he join the air force? 5 Really? When did he join the fire brigade?

**36.5** Possible answers:

My father is an accountant.

I have an uncle who is a doctor, and another who is retired. (He is 63 and no longer works.)

The man next door is a police officer, and his wife is a teacher.

I have another neighbour who is a journalist.

I have a friend in the army, another friend who is training to be a doctor, and a third friend who is an electrician.

**Unit 37**

**37.1** Words which are connected with money: earn, wages, salary, income

**37.2** 2 e 3 d 4 f 5 c 6 a

**37.3** 2 I work in marketing. 7 What do you do for a living?  
 3 I work for the government. 8 My job involves reading government reports.  
 4 My income is £22,000. 9 I give advice to clients.  
 5 What does your job involve? 10 I made a complaint about the service.  
 6 I'm in charge of the reception area.

**37.4** 2 runs / is in charge of 7 overtime 12 off  
 3 responsible 8 earn/make 13 advises  
 4 involves 9 conditions 14 dealing  
 5 day 10 tax 15 fixed  
 6 five 11 a 16 do/work

**37.5** Your own answers

**Unit 38**

**38.1** 2 e 3 d 4 a 5 f 6 b

**38.2**

verb	noun	adjective
employ	(un)employment	(un)employed
promote	promotion	
retire	retirement	retired
resign	resignation	
succeed	success	successful
own	owner	

**38.3** 2 abroad 6 work 10 own  
 3 part time 7 succeed 11 own; success  
 4 quit; rise 8 apply 12 application  
 5 experience; courses 9 sack

**38.4** Possible answers:

- 1 Yes, I was promoted to hotel manager last year.
- 2 I get a pay rise, but not always a good one.
- 3 Yes, I went on a computer course last year.
- 4 I would like to do a course on financial planning to help me with my current job.
- 5 I have never been given the sack, but I resigned from my last job when I was given the opportunity to work for my present employer.

**Unit 39**

**39.1** 2 rubbish bin 3 filing cabinet 4 paperwork 5 noticeboard

**39.2** 2 colleagues 3 calendar 4 diary 5 invoice 6 calculator 7 loads

- 39.3 2 arranged; appointment 4 attend / go to 6 involve; organise/arrange  
3 run out 5 show (them) round
- 39.4 2 The photocopier isn't working. 5 We've run out of paper.  
3 We've got loads of work today. 6 Why is he absent this morning?  
4 I have to attend a meeting.

39.5 *Possible answer:*

In my job as a dentist, I have to do quite a lot of paperwork, I send a few emails, I attend a few meetings, and I never use a photocopier. I don't show people round, I don't have to organise events or type letters, and I don't send out invoices. The only things I repair are people's teeth.

**Unit 40**

40.1 Words which refer to people: expert, accountant, client, contacts

- 40.2 2 demand 5 employees 8 job  
3 aim 6 set up 9 expanding  
4 firm/business 7 headquarters 10 a great deal

- 40.3 2 take up 5 set up 8 take over  
3 clients 6 customer 9 a former  
4 ex- 7 currently

- 40.4 2 They achieved a lot / a great deal.  
3 I have a lot of contacts in banking.  
4 They were formerly (called) BMG.  
5 It's always been my ambition to fly a plane.  
6 She's an expert in finance.  
7 The adverts attracted (a lot of) attention.

- 40.5 2 firm/business/company 4 branch 6 expanded  
3 achieved/had 5 run 7 ambition/aim

**Unit 41**

- 41.1 2 by 3 from 4 of 5 in 6 in 7 of

- 41.2 2 a loan 3 interest 4 inflation 5 profit 6 trade 7 trend

- 41.3 1 loan; charges; interest; pay back. ANSWER €600  
2 rate; % (per cent); pay back. ANSWER €575.

- 41.4 2 figures 6 sharp 10 quarters  
3 increased / went up / rose 7 fall/decrease 11 risen / gone up  
4 made 8 loss 12 sharply  
5 raise/increase 9 stayed

41.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 About 2% 2 7-8% 3 Badly 4 2008-9 5 One British pound is 1.6 US dollars.

**Unit 42**

42.1

sport	person	place	verb	equipment
swimming, motor racing, basketball, skiing	golfer, athlete, goalkeeper, racing driver	court, track, pitch, rink	jump, box, race, sail	net, stick, skis, swimming costume



42.2 2 do 3 play 4 ski 5 did 6 go 7 do 8 keep 9 work out

42.3 2 swimming/swimmer 3 boxing/boxer 4 sailing/sailor 5 athletics/athlete

42.4 2 hockey 5 costumes 8 climbing  
3 courses 6 racing 9 tent  
4 fun/pleasure 7 fit 10 jogging

42.5 Possible answers:

- 1 In the winter I play football, and in the summer I play tennis and go swimming. It's not serious; I just do it for fun.
- 2 I watch a lot of sport on the TV: football, tennis, ice hockey, motor racing. In fact, I'll watch almost any sport if I have nothing else to do.

### Unit 43

43.1 2 lose / lost / have lost  
3 beat / beat / have beaten  
4 draw / drew / have drawn  
5 break / broke / have broken  
6 give up / gave up / have given up

43.2 2 both are correct 4 tournament 6 beat  
3 score 5 both are correct 7 competition

43.3 2 score; result (score is also possible) 7 league  
3 beat/defeated 8 took  
4 drew 9 leading  
5 championship/tournament 10 against  
6 record

43.4



43.5 Possible answers:

- 1 I've taken part in lots of competitions: football, cricket, rugby, swimming and athletics.
- 2 I won a cup competition at secondary school in football.
- 3 I was captain of the rugby team at secondary school.
- 4 I came first in a backstroke (swimming) race when I was at primary school, and at secondary school I won the 100 and 200 metres (athletics) on several occasions.
- 5 I've watched lots of finals on TV: the FA Cup, the World Cup, the UEFA Cup, Wimbledon, the French Open, the Olympics, and so on. I also went to Twickenham to see the rugby team I support in an important final of a cup competition. Unfortunately we lost.

## Unit 44

- 44.1** across: literature, author, actor, fiction, novel, poetry, comedy  
 down: poem, thriller, star, film, review
- 44.2** 2 ~~year~~ century                      5 ~~article~~ review  
 3 ~~past~~ future                          6 ~~autobiography~~ biography  
 4 ~~happening~~ on                      7 ~~frightened~~ laugh; or ~~comedies~~ horror films
- 44.3** 2 entertainment                      5 acting                              8 director  
 3 actors                                  6 entertainer  
 4 poem                                    7 reviewer
- 44.4** 2 latest                                    4 (film) director                      6 on                                      8 novel  
 3 directed                                5 complicated                      7 comedies                          9 fancy
- 44.5** Possible answers:

- 1 I don't read poetry but I read lots of novels. I enjoy thrillers and I like the English writer William Boyd.
- 2 Yes, I go to the cinema quite a lot. There are certain directors whose films I always see, but usually I go and see films that have had good reviews, or films that friends recommend.
- 3 I read reviews in the Sunday paper.
- 4 My favourite films are *Godfather* 1 and 2, and part of the reason I like them is that they have three of my favourite actors: Robert De Niro, Al Pacino and Marlon Brando.

## Unit 45

- 45.1** 2 e    3 a    4 f    5 b    6 d
- 45.2** 2 single    3 album; comes    4 live    5 recorded    6 advertised
- 45.3** Suggested answers:  
 Ballet is a form of dancing that tells a story to music.  
 Audiences listen to concerts.  
 Albums are made in a recording studio.  
 The conductor stands in front of an orchestra.  
 A composer is someone who writes classical music.
- 45.4** 2 orchestra; conductor                      5 album                              8 composer  
 3 opera singers (tenors)                      6 guitarist                              9 operas  
 4 single    7 cellist                              10 solo; Michael Jackson

- 45.5** 1 I like rock music, pop and R&B. My taste in music is very different from my parents – they hate rock music!  
 2 My favourite artist is Beyoncé. I really like her song, *Single Ladies*.  
 3 I bought Alicia Keys' latest album earlier this year.  
 4 The last time I saw someone perform live was last year.  
 5 I'm interested in both the tune and the lyrics.  
 6 I play the guitar, but very badly!

## Unit 46

- 46.1** 2 included    3 maximum    4 exciting    5 ships/boats    6 move/walk
- 46.2** 2 The children dress up.  
 3 People come from all over Japan.  
 4 The event is held every year.  
 5 Do you celebrate your birthday? OR Do you do anything (special) to celebrate your birthday?  
 6 The festival is an annual event.

- 46.3** 2 festival 5 celebrates 8 gather  
 3 lasts 6 consists 9 Firework  
 4 takes 7 spectacular

**46.4** *Your own answers*

**Unit 47**

- 47.1** 2 excess baggage 6 duty free 10 cabin crew  
 3 check-in desk 7 flight number 11 baggage reclaim  
 4 hand luggage 8 overhead locker 12 passport control  
 5 terminal building 9 boarding card
- 47.2** 2 passengers 5 destination 8 hand luggage  
 3 luggage/suitcases 6 check your passport 9 runway  
 4 boarding card 7 gate
- 47.3** 2 announcement 5 take off 8 landed  
 3 delay 6 fasten 9 terminal  
 4 boarded 7 crew 10 flight

**47.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 The worst part of the flight for me is the take-off, and the best part is the landing because I'm just pleased when it's over. I don't like flying much.
- 2 There are often delays in the winter when the weather is bad.
- 3 I often think about the place I'm going to or the place I've just been to. Other than that, I read a book or watch a film. Occasionally I talk to the person sitting next to me.
- 4 I try to get through customs quickly, so I can go home or start to enjoy my holiday!
- 5 I never have anything to declare because I rarely buy things when I travel.

**Unit 48**

**48.1**

<i>steak</i>	<i>facilities</i>	<i>courses</i>	<i>water</i>
rare, medium, well-done	mini-bar, room service, safe	starter, main course, dessert	still, sparkling

- 48.2** 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 h 6 b 7 d 8 f

- 48.3** 2 reception 5 'll have 8 heart/centre  
 3 double/twin 6 facilities 9 mixed; course  
 4 service 7 tip 10 stay; check

- 48.4** 2 reservation 4 included (in the price) 6 parking  
 3 available 5 advance 7 to order

**48.5** *Possible answers:*

If I go to a hotel in my own country, I usually drive, so parking is very important. I also like to have satellite TV.

A restaurant is only important if there are no other good restaurants in the area.

A mini-bar and air conditioning are great if it's in the summer and it is quite hot.

I usually carry my money and credit cards with me, so I don't need a safe.

I never use room service or need internet access, so they're not important at all.

**Unit 49**

- 49.1** Religious places are: temple, cathedral, mosque

- 49.2** 2 sightseeing 4 packed 6 lost 8 go out  
 3 attractions/sights 5 explore/visit 7 market



- 49.3 2 packed                      4 great/lovely time                      6 guidebook                      8 magnificent  
 3 plenty to do                      5 worth seeing/visiting                      7 monuments                      9 look round

49.4 *Your own answers*

### Unit 50

50.1 Any four of these: sunbathe, suntan, sunburn, sunscreen, sunblock, sun cream

50.2 2 c    3 e    4 a    5 f    6 b

50.3 2 sunbathing    3 surfing    4 diving    5 windsurfing

50.4 2 b    3 a    4 c    5 c    6 b

50.5 2 recommend                      4 protection/shade                      6 stroll/walk                      8 go for / have  
 3 risk                      5 breeze                      7 shade

50.6 *Possible answers:*

- 1 I go to seaside resorts in the south-west of England, and sometimes the south of France, or the coast of Spain near Barcelona. I usually go once or twice a year.
- 2 I go for a swim; that's all.
- 3 No, I don't like sunbathing. It's boring and I get sunburn easily.
- 4 No, I don't get a suntan easily and I have had sunburn in the past. I might use sunscreen on my face. I usually wear a T-shirt or sit in the shade if it is very hot.
- 5 I like to go for a drink and then have a meal.

### Unit 51

51.1 Types of TV programme: documentary, soap opera, chat show, series

51.2 2 comes out / is published    4 Channel  
 3 regional                      5 celebrities / well-known

51.3

1	C	E	L	E	B	R	I	T	Y					
	2	S	E	R	I	E	S							
	3	R	E	P	O	R	T							
		4	S	O	A	P	O	P	E	R	A			
			5	D	A	I	L	Y						
			6	D	O	C	U	M	E	N	T	A	R	Y
				7	N	A	T	I	O	N	A	L		
			8	C	H	A	T	S	H	O	W			
				9	A	R	T	I	C	L	E			

51.4 2 reporters/journalists                      5 says/said                      8 According; forecast  
 3 headline                      6 review                      9 soap  
 4 station                      7 adverts/advertisements                      10 reality

51.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 I think there are about ten national newspapers in England.
- 2 At least three only come out on Sunday: *The Observer*, *The People* and *The News of the World*.
- 3 I read the front-page stories, the sports pages, the reviews, and anything that looks interesting.
- 4 I watch the news and the weather forecast every day. Programmes I enjoy are documentaries and some drama series. I never watch soap operas.

### Unit 52

52.1 1 I gave him a ring; I rang him  
 2 *Possible answers:* the line was engaged, you rang the wrong number, Tom was out / wasn't in  
 3 Any three of these: a mobile number, an emergency number, the wrong number, a home phone / landline number

- 52.2** 2 calling 7 message 12 It's  
 3 My name is 8 answerphone 13 through  
 4 putting 9 out / not in 14 engaged  
 5 Is that 10 phone/ring/call (you) back 15 on  
 6 Speaking 11 Is that

- 52.3** 2 kiss 5 bye for now 8 for your information 11 boyfriend  
 3 see you later 6 in my opinion 9 laughing out loud 12 you  
 4 oh, I see 7 as soon as possible 10 thanks

**52.4** *Your own answers*

**Unit 53**

- 53.1** 2 h 3 a 4 g 5 b 6 d 7 f 8 c

- 53.2** 2 laptop 3 keyboard 4 spacebar 5 username 6 password

- 53.3** 2 copy 3 cut 4 save 5 paste 6 print 7 open an existing document

- 53.4** 2 hard drive/disk 3 virus 4 laptop 5 password

- 53.5** 2 back up 3 stored; backup/copy 4 install 5 create/open; menu 6 virus; anti-virus

**53.6** *Possible answer:*

I have a PC and I use the operating system Windows Vista on it. My computer has a 500GB hard drive so I can store lots of data, particularly photos. I've recently installed software that will help me make my family tree. I have anti-virus software too, which is very important. I'm currently running Microsoft Word.

**Unit 54**

- 54.1** 2 e 3 a 4 c 5 f 6 d

- 54.2** 2 Internet Service Provider 6 Emails that you do not want, usually advertisements  
 3 Access to email and other services 7 Zac at hotmail dot com  
 4 Browsers 8 They discuss things and share information about themselves.  
 5 A particular subject or their everyday lives

- 54.3** 2 immediately; essential 5 attachment; checked 8 regularly  
 3 click; link 6 download; download; clips  
 4 access 7 anti-virus

**54.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 I use the Internet a lot for my work. I use the BBC website a lot, and I read newspapers online.
- 2 I don't have a blog, but I occasionally read other people's.
- 3 I don't download much stuff from the Internet.
- 4 I watch video clips on Youtube: sporting events, comedy clips, etc. I also watch TV on the Internet.
- 5 I don't use social networking sites at all.

**Unit 55**

www.irLanguage.com

**55.1**

noun	person	verb
crime	<i>criminal</i>	commit a crime
murder	murderer	murder
theft	thief	steal/take
robbery	robber	rob
burglary	burglar	burgle

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

55.2 theft/steal; crime/offence; jail/prison; get away/escape; hit/attack

55.3 2 arrest 3 innocent 4 murder 5 offence 6 fine 7 crime 8 punished

55.4 2 stealing 6 worth 10 robbery  
3 broke 7 escape / get away 11 court  
4 attacked/hit 8 arrested 12 guilty  
5 stole 9 detectives / the police 13 prison/jail

### Unit 56

56.1 2 political 3 beliefs 4 powerful 5 reduction 6 politicians

56.2

1	A	B	O	V	E	A	L	L				
					2	L	E	A	D	E	R	
					3	E	L	D	E	R	L	Y
					4	C	U	T				
					5	T	A	X				
		6	P	O	L	I	C	Y				
	7	S	U	P	P	O	R	T				
					8	U	N	F	A	I	R	

56.3 2 They voted for her.  
3 Elections are held every five years.  
4 They will provide hospitals with more money. OR They will provide more money for hospitals.  
5 It's a secret ballot.  
6 The system treats everyone equally / fairly / the same way.  
7 Our policy is to provide care for old people / the elderly.

56.4 2 constituencies 5 vote 8 government  
3 political 6 parliament 9 prime  
4 Elections 7 party

56.5 *Your own answers*

56.6 *Your own answers*

### Unit 57

57.1 2 fun 3 few 4 now 5 son 6 comfortable

57.2 2 a 3 d 4 e 5 b

57.3 2 recycle 5 Save 8 reduce  
3 waste 6 switching/turning 9 Take  
4 tap 7 Plant

57.4 2 create 7 environment  
3 result 8 destroy  
4 effects 9 efficient  
5 flood 10 Energy  
6 drought; occurring/happening





**59.5** Possible answers (from a Spanish man):

- 1 I've been in my present job for a year.
- 2 It takes me half an hour to get to work.
- 3 A typical working day for me lasts about seven hours. I work from 9.30 am to 1.30 pm, then I have a long lunch break (siesta) and work again from 5 pm to 8 pm.
- 4 I've been studying English since 2003, but I stopped for three years during 2006–9.
- 5 I haven't spoken English since 11 o'clock this morning.
- 6 I saw my cousin Rafa the other day.
- 7 Nowadays I don't go to the gym as much as I used to.
- 8 One day I hope to be a very successful architect.

**Unit 60**

**60.1** 2 two and a half

- 3 two thousand, three hundred and forty-five
- 4 nought point two five
- 5 one million, two hundred and fifty thousand
- 6 ten point nought/oh four
- 7 forty-seven per cent
- 8 the tenth of September (OR September the tenth)
- 9 nine four oh/zero, double three eight
- 10 minus five degrees Celsius (OR five degrees below zero)
- 11 in nineteen ninety-six
- 12 twenty twelve (OR two thousand and twelve)

**60.2** 2 twenty thousand

- 3 the seventh of June / June the seventh
- 4 two hundred and twenty
- 5 the thirty-first of August / August the thirty-first
- 6 seven two three, six oh/zero nine

**60.3** 2 majority 3 minority 4 calculator 5 up; work 6 stuck

**60.4** 2 seventy-two 3 sixty 4 five 5 three 6 fifteen

**60.5** Possible answers:

- 1 Nineteen eighty eight
- 2 One metre eighty
- 3 My building is number twenty-one, and I live in flat three.
- 4 June the sixth
- 5 About eighty thousand
- 6 I think it's about thirty-seven degrees.

**Unit 61**

**61.1** 2 it's (quite) shallow. 5 it's huge/enormous.

- 3 it's (quite) narrow. 6 it's tiny.
- 4 he's (quite) tall.

**61.2** 2 What's the depth of the lake?

- 3 How high is the mountain?
- 4 What's the height of the mountain?
- 5 How tall is she?
- 6 What's her height?
- 7 How long/wide is the pitch?
- 8 What's the length/width of the pitch?

**61.3** Possible answers:

- 1 It's just round the corner. 5 No, it isn't far.
- 2 It's about a mile away. 6 Yes, (it's) quite a long way – about twenty miles.
- 3 It's just down the road. 7 About fifteen minutes' walk.
- 4 No, not far. 8 About ten minutes' walk.

## Unit 62

62.1	objects	materials	shapes	colours
	bell, flag, bucket, ladder	silk, cotton, plastic, fur	circle, square	pink, grey, purple, navy blue

62.2 2 a 3 e 4 b 5 f 6 c

62.3 2 a pink flag 4 a purple shirt 6 a navy blue hat  
3 a round mirror 5 a square table

62.4 2 a prawn 3 a bucket 4 a ladder 5 the moon 6 bones

62.5 *Possible answers:*

- 1 No. I don't think they look nice.
- 2 I have a pink top, a purple skirt, a navy blue jumper and navy blue jeans.
- 3 I've got a T-shirt with different-coloured stripes and a skirt with thin blue and black stripes.
- 4 I've got nothing made from fur, but I have got two silk dresses.
- 5 I've got several pairs of leather shoes and some leather bags.

## Unit 63

63.1 2 care 3 far 4 new 5 cup 6 run 7 want

63.2 2 a packet of spaghetti 6 a jug of water  
3 a bowl of fruit 7 a box of matches  
4 a jar of coffee 8 a bar of soap  
5 a carton of milk 9 a bag of apples

63.3 2 a jar of jam 6 a tube of toothpaste  
3 a packet of cigarettes 7 a vase of flowers  
4 a can of coia 8 a packet of biscuits  
5 a carton of milk (or a bottle of milk)

63.4 2 bunch 5 sheet/piece/bit 8 couple  
3 slices/pieces/bits 6 drop/spoonful 9 contents  
4 dozen 7 plenty/lots 10 several

63.5 2 apples 3 a pair of 4 biscuit 5 crisps 6 shirts 7 bunch

## Unit 64

64.1 I'm terribly sorry / I beg your pardon  
I was held up / there was a delay  
don't worry / never mind

64.2 2 Not 4 I'm; cancelled; problem 6 apologise; Never  
3 keep; long; right 5 kind 7 beg

64.3 *Possible answers:*

- 2 I'm sorry I'm late but I overslept.
- 3 Oh, thank you very much. That's very kind of you.
- 4 I'm sorry to disturb you.
- 5 Excuse me, I have to take an important phone call.
- 6 I'm sorry to keep you waiting. I won't be long.
- 7 I'm sorry I'm late but I got held up / delayed in traffic.
- 8 I must apologise for not sending the information we promised you. Unfortunately....



- 64.4** 1 I'm sometimes late for class. I have to apologise to my teacher and say why I'm late. Usually it's because I miss the bus.  
 2 I apologised to my friend as I spilt water on one of her books. I said that I was sorry and offered to buy her a new one. I didn't give an excuse.

### Unit 65

- 65.1** A: ~~Do~~ you like to go out this evening? *Would*  
 B: I'm afraid ~~but~~ I haven't got any money.  
 A: That's OK. I'll pay. How about ~~go~~ to see a film? *going*  
 B: No, I think I'd rather ~~to~~ stay in. I have to do some homework.  
 A: Why ~~you don't~~ do your homework this afternoon? *don't you*  
 B: I'm busy this afternoon.  
 A: Well, we could ~~to~~ go tomorrow.  
 B: Yeah, ~~it's~~ a great idea. *that's*

- 65.2** 2 d 3 a 4 e 5 f 6 b

- 65.3** 1 mind 3 wondering; problem 5 mind; ahead  
 2 possibly; course 4 fancy; mind; don't; idea 6 shall; about; could; rather; like

- 65.4** *Possible answers:*  
 2 Yes, of course.  
 3 No, I'm afraid I haven't.  
 4 No, help yourself / go ahead.  
 5 Yeah, (that's a) great idea.  
 6 No, I don't fancy that. OR Yes, if you like. / Yeah, I don't mind.  
 7 I'd rather go out somewhere. OR Yes, if you like.

### Unit 66

- 66.1** 2 What do you think of 3 How do you feel about

- 66.2** 2 of; personally 4 strongly; right 6 true 8 mean; opinion  
 3 extent 5 Personally; disagree 7 view/feeling; point/idea

- 66.3** 2 In my opinion the club needs new players.  
 3 I don't agree with you at all.  
 4 According to the newspaper, the fire was started on purpose.  
 5 I agree with her to some extent.  
 6 I take your point / I think that's a good point, but I'm not sure I agree.

- 66.4** *Possible answers:*  
 1 I completely disagree. Lots of women want to have a career *and* children.  
 2 Yes, I agree to a certain extent, but most people want to work. It's not their fault they haven't got a job.  
 3 Yes, that's true, but you have to remember there are lots of poor people in *our* country.  
 4 Yes, I take your point, but what about people who need cars for their work but don't have a lot of money?

### Unit 67

- 67.1** 2 so do I 4 to living 6 prefer rugby to football  
 3 I like it very much 5 Me neither. / Neither do I. 7 not interested in music

- 67.2** 2 common 3 all 4 interest 5 into 6 used 7 rather 8 getting

- 67.3** 2 So do I. Me too. 4 Neither can I. Me neither. 6 Neither am I. Me neither.  
 3 Neither do I. Me neither. 5 So am I. Me too. 7 So have I. Me too.

- 67.4** 2 I can't stand these new shoes.  
 3 She'd rather go home.  
 4 I'm not very keen on James Bond films.  
 5 I don't mind the new building.  
 6 I used to go riding a lot.  
 7 We have a lot (of things) in common.  
 8 I'm getting used to this new computer.  
 9 I don't have the same attitude to work now. OR My attitude to work has changed.

**67.5** Possible answers:

I really like Italian food. I prefer classical music to pop music.  
 I don't mind getting up early. Opera doesn't interest me.  
 I can't stand waiting for buses or trains. I used to have a beard, but not any more.

**Unit 68**

**68.1** take care; excuse me; bless you; thank goodness; not bad

**68.2** 2 going; bad 4 thank goodness 6 Congratulations  
 3 same to 5 take 7 how about

**68.3** 2 Goodbye. Nice to meet you. 5 Good luck  
 3 Excuse me. (Could I just get past?) 6 Cheers  
 4 Congratulations 7 Bless you

**68.4** 2 introduced; shake 3 greet 4 cheek; cheeks 5 care

**68.5** Your own answers

**Unit 69**

**69.1** 2 unable 6 uncomfortable 10 dishonest  
 3 incorrect 7 disagree 11 unfair  
 4 unusual 8 unnecessary 12 unlucky  
 5 impossible 9 irregular

**69.2** 2 e 3 h 4 f 5 c 6 g 7 a 8 d

**69.3** 2 illegal 5 incorrect 8 dishonest  
 3 undressed 6 unfit 9 unlucky  
 4 unlikely 7 unexpected 10 unfair

**69.4** unkind; impatient; unsuitable; dislike; undo; unfashionable; unreliable; unfriendly; untidy; inability; unsociable

**Unit 70**

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

**70.1**

verb	noun	adjective	noun
dis'cuss	dis'cussion	'stupid	stu'pidity
im'prove	im'improvement	'happy	'happiness
in'vent	in'vention	'similar	simi'larity
re'lax	relax'ation	'popular	popu'larity
'hesitate	hesi'tation	sad	'sadness
ar'range	ar'rangement	'active	ac'tivity

**70.2** 2 actors 4 translators 6 ballet dancers 8 scientists  
 3 directors 5 footballers 7 artists

**70.3** 2 management 4 inability 6 economists  
 3 government 5 discussions 7 improvement

- 70.4** 2 similarity                      4 translation                      6 fitness  
 3 invention                              5 artist                              7 development

### Unit 71

- 71.1** 2 careful                              5 comfortable                      8 correct  
 3 reliable                                6 annual                              9 unbelievable  
 4 peaceful                                7 unforgettable

- 71.2** 2 f    3 a    4 g    5 b    6 h    7 e    8 c

- 71.3** 2 attractive                              7 electrical                              12 dangerous  
 3 personal                                8 political                              13 creative  
 4 cloudy                                    9 enjoyable                              14 emotional  
 5 colourful                                10 national                              15 foggy  
 6 famous                                    11 windy

- 71.4** Words with an opposite with the suffix *-less*: useful/useless; careful/careless; painful/painless

- 71.5** 2 unbelievable                              6 useless                              10 unforgettable  
 3 helpful                                    7 reliable                              11 traditional  
 4 annual                                    8 reasonable                              12 suitable  
 5 painful                                    9 personal

- 71.6** Possible answers:

- 2 a jacket: (un)comfortable, (un)fashionable, useful, attractive, (un)suitable  
 3 an event: annual, enjoyable, traditional, political, cultural, famous  
 4 a person you know: (un)reliable, sociable, helpful, attractive, famous, normal,  
 5 an opinion: political, personal, (un)reasonable  
 6 a room: (un)comfortable, peaceful, colourful, attractive

### Unit 72

- 72.1** 2 leaving    3 in    4 on    5 to help    6 her a big kiss    7 about    8 have

- 72.2** 2 We chatted for a bit.                      6 I regret leaving home.  
 3 The policeman rescued her ...              7 I promised to go to the party.  
 4 I attempted to help ...                      8 They told us to stand in a queue ...  
 5 Have you replied to the letter?

- 72.3** 2 go on a diet if necessary                      7 put on the brakes but it was too late  
 3 have a guess                                    8 gave the kitchen windows a wash  
 4 with a smile                                    9 They made an attempt to help her  
 5 had a dream about my mother              10 had a chat  
 6 haven't found a cure for this disease

- 72.4** 2 different    3 different    4 similar    5 different    6 similar

### Unit 73

- 73.1** Roads: *public transport*, traffic lights, crossroads, bus stop, bus station  
 Money: income tax, cashpoint, credit card  
 Hair: haircut, hairdresser, hairdryer  
 Jobs: hairdresser, travel agent, film-maker, DJ, bus driver, (babysitter)  
 Things we wear: earrings, T-shirt, sunglasses  
 Air travel: airport, airline, aircraft

- 73.2** 2 travel agent                              5 birthday card                      8 income tax  
 3 campsite                                    6 babysitter                              9 hairdryer  
 4 wheelchair                                7 sunglasses



- 73.3 2 chest of drawers      4 ID/identity card      6 ice hockey      8 credit card  
 3 DJ (disc jockey)      5 mother tongue      7 full stop

73.4 *Possible answers:*

- 2 bus stop      8 sister-in-law, mother-in-law, father-in-law  
 3 hairdryer      9 suntan, sunshine, sunblock, sunburn, sunscreen  
 4 birthday card, ID card      10 traffic jam  
 5 toothbrush      11 armchair  
 6 bus station      12 film director  
 7 dining room

**Unit 74**

- 74.1 2 had a baby      7 predict the future  
 3 missed the bus      8 expecting a baby  
 4 a serious head injury      9 told me a very funny joke  
 5 it depends on the weather      10 a large amount of money  
 6 spent three days

- 74.2 2 lose    3 virally    4 puts on    5 likely    6 serious    7 well

- 74.3 2 loud    3 wide    4 limited    5 large    6 great    7 limited

- 74.4 2 fast      5 scored      8 went off  
 3 great      6 told      9 fell  
 4 expecting      7 wide      10 terribly

74.5 *Your own answers*

**Unit 75**

- 75.1 sooner or later; one or two; peace and quiet; day after day; now and again; up and down; so far; right away

- 75.2 2 By the way      5 get rid of      8 For instance  
 3 out of the blue      6 In general      9 I'm just about to  
 4 to be honest      7 make up my mind      10 If I were you

- 75.3 2 One or two      6 sooner or later      10 so far  
 3 burst into tears      7 Once or twice      11 ring a bell  
 4 the week before last      8 at once      12 apart from  
 5 if I were you      9 In two weeks' time

- 75.4 2 cost a fortune = cost a lot of money  
 3 keep an eye on = watch (and make sure something is safe)  
 4 on the tip of my tongue = I know it but I can't remember it at the moment  
 5 a night on the town = a night out  
 6 could do with = need

**Unit 76**

76.1	positive	negative	not sure or either
	why not; I suppose so	no way; not really	you're kidding; that depends; I don't believe it

- 76.2 2 see      4 help      6 pay  
 3 both are correct      5 What      7 both are correct

- 76.3 2 pays attention      4 felt bad about that/it      6 changed my mind  
 3 had a word with her      5 no idea

- 76.4** 2 *Kind of blue*  
 3 *Well, in that case ...*  
 4 *You must be joking. That's ten miles!*  
 5 *Yeah. Why not?*  
 6 *Oh, burgers, pizzas, that sort of thing.*  
 7 *Yes. I couldn't believe my eyes.*

### Unit 77

- 77.1** 2 h 3 e 4 b 5 g 6 d 7 a 8 f
- 77.2** 2 at; e.g. maths and history  
 3 to; e.g. me, Carl  
 4 on; e.g. clothes, himself  
 5 of; e.g. heights, nothing  
 6 in; e.g. thrillers, serious films  
 7 on; e.g. my parents, the time  
 8 at; e.g. the children, I don't know  
 9 on; e.g. all of them, none of them  
 10 into; e.g. German
- 77.3** 2 similar 5 wrong 8 aware  
 3 complain 6 with 9 short  
 4 mad 7 concentrate 10 depend
- 77.4** keen on; suffer from; succeed in; get married to; apply for; apologise for
- 77.5** *Possible answers:*  
 1 at languages 4 on food, clothes, rent and my car  
 2 in sport 5 of going to Turkey  
 3 of flying

### Unit 78

- 78.1**
- | on                           | in                    | by                      |
|------------------------------|-----------------------|-------------------------|
| board, display, fire, strike | detail, future, tears | hand, accident, mistake |
- 78.2** 2 on purpose 4 out-of-date 6 at the moment 8 in future  
 3 by chance 5 on business 7 in a hurry
- 78.3** 2 strike 6 hurry 10 display  
 3 hand 7 future 11 moment; phone  
 4 minute/moment 8 date 12 end  
 5 purpose 9 detail
- 78.4** 2 in time 4 in the end 6 at the moment 8 in a minute/moment 10 in detail  
 3 on fire 5 at the end 7 by chance 9 out-of-date

### Unit 79

- 79.1** 2 away 3 out 4 back 5 up 6 up 7 up 8 on
- 79.2** 2 go back 5 give up 8 get on (well)  
 3 picked up 6 carry on 9 take on  
 4 put up 7 go away
- 79.3** b meaning 5 c meaning 2 d meaning 4 e meaning 1
- 79.4** 2 sort (it) out 4 lie down 6 look (it) up 8 Hurry up  
 3 put them back 5 fell over 7 putting on / put on

### Unit 80

- 80.1** 2 put them on 4 take them off 6 turn it down  
 3 correct 5 correct 7 hanging around the station
- 80.2** 2 put off 3 make up 4 left out 5 turned down 6 get in

- 80.3** 1 ALSO: He's putting his jacket on.  
 2 She's turning the light on. / She's turning on the light.  
 3 The car has broken down.  
 4 He's breaking into a shop.  
 5 They're hanging around (a street corner).  
 6 The teacher is handing out books. / The teacher is handing books out.

- 80.4** 2 out 3 up 4 off 5 for 6 down

**80.5** *Possible answers:*

- |                   |                 |                    |
|-------------------|-----------------|--------------------|
| 2 a cold/flu      | 4 the light/TV  | 6 her children/dog |
| 3 stories/excuses | 5 the shop/flat |                    |

**Unit 81**

- 81.1** 2 do 4 do 6 take 8 made  
 3 both are correct 5 both are correct 7 do

- 81.2** 2 She's having/taking a shower. 5 They're making a noise.  
 3 She's taking it/things easy. 6 She's doing her hair.  
 4 She's taking something out of her pocket.

- 81.3** 2 made us go 4 take a break 6 make up their minds  
 3 doing my best 5 making an effort 7 take things/it easy

- 81.4** 2 take 5 take 8 take  
 3 made 6 look 9 do (take is also possible)  
 4 done 7 made 10 made

**81.5** *Your own answers*

**Unit 82**

- 82.1** give: a speech; someone a hug; someone a hand  
 miss: an opportunity; a person; what someone says  
 keep: in touch; on doing something; a secret

- 82.2** 2 dry 3 laughing 4 fit 5 forgetting 6 quiet 7 thinking 8 waking

- 82.3** 2 gave her a ring 4 keep in touch 6 missed his opportunity  
 3 gave her a big hug 5 give you a hand 7 given me an appetite

- 82.4** 2 miss all the fun 5 miss the rush hour 8 miss my dog  
 3 keep it up 6 keeps getting headaches 9 keep a secret  
 4 gave me a push 7 gave me the idea

**Unit 83**

- 83.1** 2 buy/obtain 3 fetch 4 arrive 5 became 6 obtain/find 7 answer 8 received

- 83.2** 2 getting hungry 4 getting dark 6 getting worse  
 3 getting hot 5 getting late

- 83.3** 2 get together and have a meal. 6 get in before 10 o'clock.  
 3 get to know people in this country? 7 get out.  
 4 get in touch with the travel company. 8 get to sleep for hours last night.  
 5 get rid of these old magazines.

- 83.4** 2 need to get it cut. 4 need to get it fixed/repaired  
 3 need to get it finished. 5 need to get them back.



83.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 84

- 84.1 2 (out) for a picnic 6 swimming  
3 (out) for a drink/meal 7 (out) for a walk  
4 sightseeing 8 clubbing  
5 (out) for a drive 9 (out) for a meal / for a picnic / for a drink
- 84.2 2 are you? 5 happening 8 take me  
3 fetch 6 disappeared 9 chose  
4 continue 7 return
- 84.3 2 going blind 4 went mad 6 go and get 8 went out  
3 going (very) well 5 going bald 7 go away
- 84.4 *Your own answers*

Unit 85

- 85.1 hearing; taste; smell; touch
- 85.2 2 listening to; heard 5 look at 8 touch  
3 hear 6 watched 9 look; see  
4 seen 7 feel 10 seems
- 85.3 2 felt like silk 6 seem/appear very nice  
3 looked like a church 7 feels/looks damp  
4 sounded like an alarm 8 seemed/appeared/looked calm and relaxed  
5 taste like/of coconut
- 85.4 2 sounds as if/though 5 tastes as if  
3 feel as if/though 6 looks as if/though  
4 sounds as if 7 seemed/appeared as if/though (*also* looked as if/though)
- 85.5 *Your own answers*

Unit 86

- 86.1 2 ~~a news~~ news / some news / a bit of news  
3 ~~advices~~ advice  
4 ~~are~~ is  
5 ~~homeworks~~ homework  
6 ~~furnitures were~~ furniture was  
7 ~~experiences~~ experience ~~these equipments~~ this equipment  
8 ~~knowledges~~ knowledge
- 86.2 2 a useful piece/bit of equipment.  
3 a good piece/bit of advice.  
4 another piece/bit of toast?  
5 a bit of progress. (piece is not possible here)  
6 a bit of rubbish on the floor. (piece is not possible here)  
7 a bit of pocket money. (piece is not possible here)  
8 a bit/piece of news this morning.
- 86.3 2 experience 3 room/space 4 advice 5 furniture 6 progress
- 86.4 2 experiences 4 rubbish 6 behaviour 8 knowledge  
3 chance 5 scenery 7 experience
- 86.5 transport U luggage U suitcase C pasta U traffic U accident C

## Unit 87

- 87.1** 2 to help                      5 on                                      8 to speak                      11 waiting  
3 staying                      6 to get                                      9 him for help                      12 travelling  
4 going                      7 working                                      10 for

- 87.2** 2 thinking                      5 blamed                                      8 considered  
3 imagine                      6 hoping; intended/planned                      9 insisted; hates  
4 avoid                      7 enjoyed/liked                                      10 demanded

- 87.3** fancy + -ing  
decide + infinitive or decide + (that)  
pretend + infinitive or pretend + (that)  
accuse + (obj) + of

**87.4** *Possible answers:*

I like reading. I dislike sport. I don't mind doing homework. I'm thinking of going to the mountains this weekend to ski. I can't imagine living without my two dogs. I hope to go to university next year. I intend to buy myself a motorbike when I go to university.

## Unit 88

- 88.1** 2 He told me it's / it was impossible.  
3 I asked Talia to stay with me.  
4 She suggested that we go to an Italian restaurant. OR She suggested going to ...  
5 I warned them not to go.  
6 He helped me to buy my suit.  
7 She allowed us to go.  
8 He said the film was terrible. OR He told me ...  
9 She advised me to buy a dictionary.  
10 I recommended that they stay there. OR I recommend staying there.  
11 He reminded me to go to the bank.  
12 I want him to leave.

- 88.2** 2 noticed                      5 convinced                                      8 encouraged                      11 expect  
3 warn                      6 recommended                                      9 reminded                      12 hope  
4 persuaded                      7 mentioned                                      10 help

**88.3** *Possible answers:*

- 2 (that) we have something to eat.  
3 her to ring the police.  
4 (that) something was wrong / she looked ill / she was smiling, etc.  
5 me to stay up late / watch TV, etc.  
6 (that) it wasn't mine.  
7 them to go.  
8 (that) she'll be late.  
9 them not to drink it.  
10 I would look after it / bring it back tomorrow, etc.

**88.4** *Your own answers*

## Unit 89

**89.1**

gradable adjectives	extreme adjectives
<i>bad, important, small, tired, frightened</i>	<i>dreadful, essential, tiny, exhausted, terrified</i>

**89.2** ~~very pleased~~ (really/absolutely) delighted  
~~very big~~ (really/absolutely) huge/enormous  
 food is ~~very nice~~ (really/absolutely) delicious  
 last three days have been ~~very nice~~ (really/absolutely) wonderful/marvellous/terrific  
~~very important~~ (absolutely/really) essential  
~~very interesting~~ (absolutely/really) fascinating

**89.3** 2 terrifying                      4 amazing/terrific/wonderful/marvellous                      6 annoyed  
 3 shocked                              5 delighted

**89.4** 2 disappointed/annoyed    3 embarrassed    4 confused    5 amazed/surprised    6 delighted

### Unit 90

**90.1** 2 in    3 at    4 on    5 at    6 in    7 on    8 on    9 at    10 on    11 in    12 at

**90.2** 2 among    3 into    4 beside    5 out of    6 towards    7 up    8 underneath

**90.3** 2 under the fence                      4 after the bridge                      6 (right) against  
 3 get out of the car                      5 below/beneath me

**90.4** *Possible answers:*

- 1 No, because it will be noisy at night due to the ambulances.
- 2 No, because of the smell and the noise.
- 3 No, because it's dangerous.
- 4 No. I like one or two things on the wall, but not lots of things because it looks untidy.
- 5 No. I prefer the aisle seat because I can move around easily without disturbing anyone else.
- 6 Well, that sounds nice, but it really depends who the people are.

### Unit 91

**91.1** 2 She hardly ever phones me.  
 3 I have never broken my leg.  
 4 I frequently visit them at weekends. OR I visit them frequently at weekends.  
 5 My brother quite often calls me on Sunday.  
 6 I rarely saw him during the summer.  
 7 She is always in the office before eight.

**91.2** 2 rarely/seldom                      4 completely                      6 incredibly  
 3 fairly/pretty/rather                      5 a little / slightly                      7 frequently

**91.3** 2 I must speak to her urgently.                      5 He suddenly ran out of the room.  
 3 I asked him politely to move his car.                      6 I spoke to her briefly this morning.  
 4 I spoke to her secretly.

**91.4** 2 extremely/incredibly                      4 very                      6 a bit / a little / slightly  
 3 very                      5 quite/fairly/pretty/rather                      7 quite/fairly/pretty/rather

**91.5** *Possible answers:*

- 2 I sometimes buy clothes I don't like. I buy them because they are fashionable. I think that's fairly typical.
- 3 I hardly ever lose things; I'm very careful. I think that's slightly unusual.
- 4 I often forget things – my glasses, people's names, etc. I expect that's fairly typical.
- 5 For some reason, I hardly ever remember my dreams. I think that's quite unusual.
- 6 I often speak to strangers on buses and trains. That's probably quite unusual.
- 7 I sometimes give money to people in the street; it depends how I feel. That's fairly typical, I think.



## Unit 92

- 92.1** for one thing / for a start  
when / as soon as  
besides/anyway  
finally / in the end  
at first / to begin with
- 92.2** 2 get                      5 both are correct                      8 while  
3 while                      6 just as                      9 both are correct  
4 leaving                      7 both are correct                      10 cleaning
- 92.3** 1 besides/anyway/secondly  
2 first of all; Then / After that; finally  
3 at first / to begin with; while  
4 firstly / for a start / for one thing; secondly/besides/anyway  
5 at first / to begin with; while; Eventually / In the end
- 92.4** *Possible answers:*  
2 you finish / you've finished                      6 he/she looked up the other half  
3 I get there/home                      7 we got there  
4 leaving                      8 it's not important / we can phone him later  
5 he opened the door / he got out of the car

## Unit 93

- 93.1**
- | words that add more information                 | words that introduce surprising information |
|---|---|
| <i>in addition</i> , as well, also, what's more | although, in spite of, however, despite     |
- 93.2** 2 however                      5 However                      8 despite  
3 both are correct                      6 both are correct  
4 even though                      7 both are correct
- 93.3** She always worked hard in class, whereas most of her classmates were lazy.  
She has the ability to do the job. What's more, she is very experienced.  
She didn't pass the exam in spite of the help I gave her.  
She worked there for ten years. However, she was never happy in the job.
- 93.4** 2 In spite of / Despite; still                      6 as well / too  
3 However                      7 though  
4 although / even though                      8 yet; still  
5 In addition to / As well as / Besides
- 93.5** *Possible answers:*  
2 I get up much later                      5 I think I'll pass  
3 the bad weather                      6 she spoke very quickly  
4 it's cheaper (with a season ticket)                      7 goes jogging / plays tennis / works, etc.

## Unit 94

- 94.1** 2 Teresa got the job because of her good exam results.  
3 We couldn't eat outside because of the terrible weather.  
4 She didn't go to school because of her cold.  
5 The referee stopped the game because of the bad light.  
6 I was late because of the terrible traffic.  
7 He can't vote because of his age.
- 94.2** 2 in case                      5 As a result / Therefore                      8 otherwise  
3 as long as                      6 Unless                      9 whether/if  
4 in order to / so that I would                      7 as long as                      10 reason

94.3 2 As/Since 3 so that 4 as a result / therefore 5 unless 6 whether

94.4 Possible answers:

I want to improve my English because *I need good English for my job.*

I don't know whether my English *is good enough.*

I often need to write words down in my notebook, otherwise *I forget them.*

I don't get many opportunities to practise my English, therefore *my speaking is not very good.*

Speaking English may be important in order to *get a better job in the future.*

## Unit 95

مرجع زبان ایرانیان

95.1 formal	informal
<i>depart</i> , regarding, purchase, proceed to, commence	cheers, mate, terrific, bloke, kids

depart	<i>leave</i>	mate	friend
cheers	thanks	commence	start
regarding	about	terrific	fantastic (marvellous, wonderful, etc.)
purchase	buy	bloke	man
proceed to	go to	kids	children

95.3 2 thing 3 a load of rubbish 4 up to 5 I'm dying for 6 make it 7 mate 8 quite a bit 9 that stuff 10 40 or so

95.4 2 We regret to inform you 3 grant 4 require further assistance

95.5 1 a drag *informal* = boring; it can also mean unpleasant, e.g. Housework is a drag.  
2 permit *formal* = allow  
3 scary *informal* = frightening  
4 quid *informal* = pounds (£)

## Unit 96

96.1 2 a registration form or an enrolment form  
3 an entry form  
4 a visa application form

96.2 2 When were you born? 3 Where do you come from? 4 Are you single or married? 5 When are you leaving?

96.3 2 g 3 f 4 b 5 a 6 d 7 e

96.4 2 correct 3 incorrect 4 incorrect 5 correct 6 correct 7 incorrect

96.5 2 tip 3 on my own 4 sign it 5 require 6 team

96.6 Your own answers

## Unit 97

97.1 2 a 3 d 4 e 5 b

97.2 2 advantages of studying 3 give both sides 4 effect on children 5 On the other hand, too 6 tends to go

97.3 2 causes; However 3 both are correct 4 hand 5 both are correct

97.4 2 In addition 3 However 4 Consequently 5 argument 6 effect

- 97.5** 2 People tend to be conservative. OR In general / On the whole people are conservative.  
 3 There is an argument that cars should not be allowed in town centres. OR Some people believe that cars should not be allowed in town centres.  
 4 In the past children played on their bikes, but nowadays they spend most of their time in front of a computer.  
 5 Many people work longer and longer hours, and consequently / as a result they don't have time for hobbies.

## Unit 98

- 98.1** Dear Sir or Madam  
 I am writing in response to your advertisement for trainees in yesterday's newspaper, and I would be grateful if you could send me further details.  
 I look forward to hearing from you.  
 Yours faithfully

- 98.2** 2 details                                      4 faithfully                                      6 regards  
 3 to hearing from you                      5 sincerely                                      7 signature

- 98.3** 2 I regret to inform you ...  
 3 I am pleased to inform you ...  
 4 Are you available on Wednesday?  
 5 I would like to enquire about the dates of the course.  
 6 Please accept our apologies for the delay.  
 7 I would be grateful if you could send me the details.  
 8 Could you confirm that in writing?  
 9 I enclose a copy of my CV.

- 98.4** 2 writing                                      4 regarding/about                                      6 delays                                      8 sincerely  
 3 response/reply                                      5 regret                                      7 apologise

## Unit 99

- 99.1** in a week's time; once again; let you know; best wishes; give my regards to
- 99.2** 2 Dear Mark                                      4 Lots of love, Trudie  
 3 Send/Give my regards/love to Patricia                                      5 All the best, Sam
- 99.3** 2 Do you fancy going?                                      6 I'm going in three weeks' time.  
 3 I'll be/get in touch soon.                                      7 Jamie is a laugh.  
 4 It looks new, but in fact it isn't.                                      8 Let's get together for lunch.  
 5 I'll let you know as soon as possible.                                      9 It's ages since I wrote.
- 99.4** 2 ages                                      6 hoping                                      10 Anyway  
 3 fact                                      7 in                                      11 let  
 4 since                                      8 together                                      12 give  
 5 actually                                      9 join

## Unit 100

- 100.1** 2 British Broadcasting Corporation                                      4 correct                                      6 correct  
 3 Member of Parliament                                      5 United Nations                                      7 curriculum vitae

- 100.2** 2 e.g.    3 etc.    4 St    5 i.e.    6 St    7 Dr

- 100.3** Luke  
 Olly had a maths exam this afternoon and then had to take his bike to the repair shop, so he'll probably be a bit late home. You can watch TV/telly while you're waiting for him, and please help yourself to anything in the fridge. If there's a problem, e.g. if Dr Brown rings about the flu vaccination, my phone number is next to the photos on the dining room table. I should be home myself by about five.  
 Pam (Olly's mum)



- 100.4** 2 bike                      5 vet                      8 ad/advert            11 lab  
3 e.g. / for example      6 etc. / and so on      9 PIN                    12 rep  
4 CV                              7 case                    10 stand

- 100.5** PTO = Please turn over (you see it at the bottom of a page)  
RSVP = Répondez s'il vous plaît, which is French for 'please reply' (you see it on letters of invitation, which means they want a reply to the invitation)  
asap = as soon as possible (in emails and text messages)  
IMO = in my opinion (also in emails and text messages)  
DOB = date of birth (on forms)  
PS = postscript. It is used at the end of a letter (after you have signed your name) to add extra information, or something you have forgotten to say in the letter.

# Phonemic symbols

## Vowel sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/i:/	sleep me
/ɪ/	happy recipe
/ɪ/	pin dinner
/ʊ/	foot could pull
/ʊ/	casual
/u:/	do shoe through
/e/	red head said
/ə/	arrive father colour
/ɜ:/	turn bird work
/ɔ:/	sort thought walk
/æ/	cat black
/ʌ/	sun enough wonder
/ɒ/	got watch sock
/ɑ:/	part heart laugh
/eɪ/	name late aim
/aɪ/	my idea time
/ɔɪ/	boy noise
/eə/	pair where bear
/ɪə/	hear cheers
/əʊ/	go home show
/aʊ/	out cow
/ʊə/	pure fewer

## Consonant sounds

<i>Symbol</i>	<i>Examples</i>
/p/	put
/b/	book
/t/	take
/d/	dog
/k/	car kick
/g/	go guarantee
/tʃ/	catch church
/dʒ/	age lounge
/f/	for cough photograph
/v/	love vehicle
/θ/	thick path
/ð/	this mother
/s/	since rice
/z/	zoo surprise
/ʃ/	shop sugar machine
/ʒ/	pleasure usual vision
/h/	hear hotel
/m/	make
/n/	name now know
/ŋ/	bring
/l/	look while
/r/	road
/j/	young
/w/	wear

ˈ This shows that the next syllable is the one with the stress.

ˌ This is used when some longer words have a second stress, less strong than on the main stressed syllable.

# Index

The numbers in the Index are **unit** numbers not page numbers.  
The pronunciation provided is for standard British English.

- a bit [slightly] ə bit 91  
 a great deal ə greɪt di:l 40  
 a laugh ə la:f 99  
 a little (bit) ə 'lɪtəl 91  
 a load of rubbish ə laʊd ɒv 'rʌbɪʃ 95  
 a long time ago ə lɒŋ taɪm ə'gəʊ 59  
 a paper ə 'peɪpə 100  
 a piece of sth ə pi:əs ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 86  
 a return ə rɪ'tɜ:n 29  
 a week/month/year (etc.) [every] ə wi:k mʌnθ jɪə 37  
 abbreviation ə,bri:v'i:ʃən 52  
 ability ə'bɪləti 70  
 able 'eɪbəl 70  
 above ə'bʌv 90  
 above all ə'bʌv ɔ:l 56  
 abroad ə'brɔ:d 38  
 absent 'æbsənt 39  
 absolutely 'æbsə'lʊ:tli 89  
 accent 'æksənt 34  
 accept ək'sept 1  
 access (to sth) 'ækses 48, 54  
 accident 'æksɪdənt 30  
 accommodation ə,kɒmə'deɪʃən 20  
 according to ə'kɔ:diŋ tu: 51, 66  
 accountant ə'kaʊntənt 36  
 accurate(ly) 'ækjərət 34  
 ache n, v eɪk 21  
 achieve ə'tʃi:v 40  
 achievement ə'tʃi:vmənt 40  
 act [do sth] ækt 57  
 act [perform] ækt 44  
 acting 'æktɪŋ 44  
 actor 'æktə 44, 70  
 actually 'æktʃʊəli 99  
 ad/advert æd'ædvɜ:t 100  
 add æd 26  
 add sth up æd 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 60  
 add to basket/bag æd tu: 'bɑ:skɪt/bæɡ 54  
 addition ə'dɪʃən 60  
 adjective 'ædʒɪktɪv 4  
 admin 'ædmɪn 37  
 admission əd'mɪʃən 31  
 adult 'ædʌlt 14  
 advantage əd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ 27  
 adverb 'ædvɜ:b 4  
 advert 'ædvɜ:t 45, 51, 100  
 advertisement əd'vɜ:tɪsmənt 51  
 advice əd'vaɪs 86  
 advise əd'vaɪz 37, 88  
 afford ə'fɔ:d 20  
 afraid (of) ə'freɪd 77  
 Africa 'æfrɪkə 5  
 after [follow sb/sth] 'ɑ:ftə 90  
 after [time/event] 'ɑ:ftə 92  
 after that 'ɑ:ftə ðæt 92  
 afterwards 'ɑ:ftəwədz 92  
 against [compete] ə'genst 43  
 against [touching] ə'genst 90  
 ages 'eɪdʒɪz 99  
 ages ago 'eɪdʒɪz ə'gəʊ 59  
 agree [have the same opinion] ə'gri: 66, 77  
 agree [say yes] ə'gri: 87  
 aim eɪm 40  
 air conditioning eə kən'dɪʃənɪŋ 17  
 air force eə fɔ:s 36  
 aircraft 'ækrɑ:ft 47, 73  
 airline 'eəlaɪn 73  
 airport 'eəpɔ:t 73  
 alarm ə'lɑ:m 74  
 album 'ælbəm 45  
 alive ə'laɪv 14  
 all over [everywhere] ɔ:l 'əʊvə 19, 46  
 all the best ɔ:l ðə best 99  
 allow ə'laʊ 14  
 almost ɔ:l'mɔ:st 14  
 alone ə'ləʊn 15  
 aloud ə'laʊd 1  
 alphabet 'ælfəbet 34  
 also ɔ:l'səʊ 93  
 although ɔ:l'ðəʊ 93  
 altogether ɔ:l'tə'geðə 13  
 amazed ə'meɪzɪd 89  
 amazing [very good] ə'meɪzɪŋ 89  
 amazing [very surprising] ə'meɪzɪŋ 89  
 ambition æm'bɪʃən 40  
 American ə'merɪkən 5  
 among ə'mʌŋ 90  
 amount ə'maʊnt 3, 20  
 and so on ænd səʊ ɒn 100  
 anger 'æŋɡə 12  
 angrily 'æŋɡrɪli 91  
 ankle 'æŋkəl 9  
 anniversary ,ænrɪ'vɜ:səri 15  
 announcement ə'naʊntsmənt 47  
 annoyed ə'nɔɪd 89  
 annoying ə'nɔɪɪŋ 89  
 annual 'ænjuəl 46, 71  
 answerphone 'ɑ:nsəfəʊn 52  
 ant ænt 8  
 antique n æn'ti:k 62  
 anti-virus software 'æntɪ 'vaɪrəs 'sɒftweə 53, 54  
 anxiety æŋ'zaiəti 12  
 anxious 'æŋkɪəs 12  
 anyway [more importantly] 'eniweɪ 92  
 anyway [returning to an earlier subject] 'eniweɪ 99  
 apart from ə'pa:t frəm 75  
 apartment ə'pɑ:tmənt 17  
 apologise for sth ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 64, 98  
 apology ə'pɒlədʒi 64  
 appear [become visible] ə'piə 69  
 appear [seem] ə'piə 85  
 appearance ə'piərəns 10  
 application (computer) ,æplɪ'keɪʃən 53  
 application (job) ,æplɪ'keɪʃən 38, 98  
 apply for sth ə'plai fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 38  
 appointment ə'pɔɪntmənt 39  
 approach ə'prəʊtʃ 30  
 approximately ə'prɒksɪmətli 10, 14  
 Arabic 'ærəbɪk 5  
 architect 'ɑ:kɪtekt 35, 36  
 architecture 'ɑ:kɪtektʃə 35  
 Argentina ,ɑ:dʒən'ti:nə 5  
 Argentinian ,ɑ:dʒən'tɪniən 5  
 argue 'ɑ:gju: 1  
 argument [angry discussion] 'ɑ:gjəmənt 1  
 argument [reason to think] 'ɑ:gjəmənt 97  
 armchair 'ɑ:mtʃeə 18  
 army 'ɑ:mi 36, 58  
 arrange ə'reɪndʒ 39  
 arrangement ə'reɪndʒmənt 39  
 arrest ə'rest 55  
 arrival ə'raɪvəl 96  
 article 'ɑ:tɪkəl 51  
 artist 'ɑ:tɪst 70  
 arts ɑ:ts 35  
 as [because] æz 94  
 as [when] æz 92  
 as a result æz ə rɪ'zʌlt 94, 97  
 as if/though æz ɪf ðəʊ 85  
 as long as æz lɒŋ æz 94  
 as soon as æz su:n æz 92  
 as well (as) æz wel 93  
 Asia 'eɪzə 5  
 ask sb for sth ɑ:sk 'sʌmbɒdi fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87  
 ask sb the way ɑ:sk 'sʌmbɒdi ðə weɪ 30  
 assistance ə'sɪstəns 95  
 at [place] æt 90  
 at [@] æt 54  
 at all æt ɔ:l 66  
 at first æt 'fɜ:st 14, 92  
 at home æt həʊm 19  
 at least æt li:st 1, 61  
 at night æt naɪt 27  
 at once æt wʌns 75



- at the end æt ði end 78  
at the moment æt ðə 'məʊmənt 78  
at the same time æt ðə seɪm taɪm 59  
athlete 'æθli:t 42  
athletic æθ'letɪk 10  
athletics æθ'letɪks 42  
atmosphere 'ætməsfɪə 24, 33  
attachment ə'tætʃmənt 54  
attack n ə'tæk 58  
attack v ə'tæk 55  
attempt n, v ə'tempt 72, 87  
attend ə'tend 33, 39  
attendance ə'tendəns 39  
attitude 'ætɪtju:d 67  
attract attention ə'trækt ə'tenfən 40  
attraction ə'trækʃən 49  
attractive ə'træktɪv 10  
aubergine 'əʊbəʒi:n 25  
audience 'ɔ:diəns 45  
Australia ɔs'treɪliə 5  
Australian ɔs'treɪliən 5  
author 'ɔ:θə 44  
available ə'veɪləbəl 48, 98  
average [typical] 'ævərɪdʒ 10  
avoid ə'vɔɪd 87  
aware of ə'weə ɒv 77  
away [distance] ə'weɪ 28, 29, 61  
awful 'ɔ:fəl 89  
babysitter 'beɪbɪ,sɪtə 73  
back up sth bæk ʌp 'sʌməθɪŋ 53  
backache 'bækək 21  
backpack 'bækpæk 22  
backup 'bækʌp 53  
bag bæɡ 63  
baggage reclaim 'bæɡɪdʒ rɪ'kleɪm 47  
bakery 'beɪkəri 40  
balcony 'bælkəni 17  
bald bɔ:ld 84  
ballet (dancer) 'bæleɪ 45  
ballot 'bælət 56  
bandage 'bændɪdʒ 21  
bank (of a river) bæŋk 28  
bank account bæŋk ə'kaʊnt 20  
bank loan bæŋk ləʊn 20  
bar (of chocolate) bɑ: 63  
barbecue n, v 'bɑ:bɪkju: 26  
basic 'beɪsɪk 34  
basket 'bɑ:skɪt 24  
bass guitar beɪs grɪ'tu: 45  
bass guitarist beɪs grɪ'tu:ɪst 45  
bath bɑ:θ 16  
battle 'bætəl 58  
BBC 'bi:bi:'si: 100  
be (just) about to bi: ə'baʊt tu: 75  
be delayed bi: dɪ'leɪd 64  
be dying for sth bi: 'daɪɪŋ fɔ: 'sʌməθɪŋ 95  
be held up bi: held ʌp 64  
be in touch bi: ɪn tʌtʃ 99  
be into sth [like sth] bi: 'ɪntə 'sʌməθɪŋ 67  
beach bi:tʃ 50  
beans bi:nz 25  
bear beə 8  
beat bi:t 43  
beauty 'bjʊ:ti 10  
because bɪ'kɔ:z 94  
because of bɪ'kɔ:z ɒv 94  
bee bi: 8  
beef bi:f 25  
before [place] bɪ'fɔ: 90  
before [time] bɪ'fɔ: 92  
behave bɪ'heɪv 3  
behaviour bɪ'heɪvjə 86  
belief bɪ'li:f 56  
believe [think] bɪ'li:v 97  
believe in bɪ'li:v ɪn 56  
bell bel 62  
belong to bɪ'lɒŋ tu: 77  
below bɪ'ləʊ 90  
bend n, v bend 30  
beneath bɪ'ni:θ 90  
beside [next to] bɪ'saɪd 90  
besides [giving another reason] bɪ'saɪdz 92  
besides [in addition] bɪ'saɪd 93  
best friend best frend 13  
best wishes best 'wɪʃɪz 99  
beyond bɪ'jɒnd 90  
bicycle 'baɪsɪkəl 29  
bike baɪk 29, 100  
billion 'bɪljən 60  
bin bɪn 39, 86  
biography baɪ'ɒgrəfi 44  
birth bɜ:θ 14  
birthday card 'bɜ:θdeɪ kɑ:d 73  
(a) bit of sth bɪt ɒv 'sʌməθɪŋ 86  
bitter 'bɪtə 26  
blame sb for sth bleɪm 'sʌmbɒdi fɔ: 'sʌməθɪŋ 87  
blanket 'blæŋkɪt 18  
bleed bli:d 21  
bless you bles ju: 68  
blind blaɪnd 84  
blinds blaɪndz 18  
block of flats blɒk ɒv flæts 17  
blog blɒɡ 54  
blogger 'blɒŋə 54  
bloke bləʊk 95  
blonde blɒnd 10  
blow v bləʊ 7  
blow your nose bləʊ jɔ: nəʊz 9  
board n, v bɔ:d 47  
board [blackboard] n bɔ:d 100  
boarding card 'bɔ:ɪŋ kɑ:d 47  
boil bɔɪl 26  
boiling 'bɔɪlɪŋ 7  
bomb bɒm 58  
bone bəʊn 62  
book v bʊk 48  
boots bu:tɪz 22  
bored bɔ:d 89  
boring 'bɔ:ɪŋ 89  
borrow 'bɒrəʊ 32  
both sides of an argument bəʊθ saɪdz ɒv æn 'ɑ:ɡjʊmənt 97  
bother 'bɒðə 16  
bottle 'bɒtəl 63  
bottom 'bɒtəm 9  
bowl bəʊl 63  
box bɒks 63  
boxing 'bɒksɪŋ 42  
bracelet 'breɪslət 22  
brake n, v breɪk 30, 72  
branch (of a company) brɑ:ntʃ 40  
branch (of a tree) brɑ:ntʃ 28  
Brazil brə'zɪl 5  
Brazilian brə'zɪliən 5  
break [rest] n breɪk 33  
break a record breɪk ə'rekɔ:d 43  
break down breɪk daʊn 39, 80  
break in (to sth) breɪk ɪn 55, 80  
break the rules breɪk ðə ru:lz 33  
break up [end a relationship] breɪk ʌp 15  
break up [end of term] breɪk ʌp 33  
breast brest 9  
breathe (in/out) bri:ð 9  
breeze bri:z 50  
brick brɪk 36  
bride braɪd 15  
(bride)groom grʊ:m 15  
bridge brɪdʒ 30  
briefly 'bri:flɪ 91  
bright braɪt 22  
bring sb luck brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi ʌk 46  
bring sb up brɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 14  
broad brɔ:d 10  
broadcast 'brɔ:dkɑ:st 51  
broccoli 'brɒkəli 25  
broken down 'brəʊkən daʊn 39  
browse braʊz 54  
browser 'braʊzə 54  
brush your teeth brʌʃ jɔ: ti:θ 16  
bucket 'bʌkɪt 62  
build bɪld 36  
builder 'bɪldə 36  
bull bʊl 8  
bunch bʌntʃ 25, 63  
burglar 'bɜ:glə 55  
burglary 'bɜ:gləri 55  
burn v bɜ:n 19  
burst into tears bɜ:st 'ɪntə tɪəz 75  
bus bʌs 29  
bus driver bʌs 'draɪvə 73  
bus station bʌs 'steɪʃən 73  
bus stop bʌs stɒp 29, 73  
business studies 'bɪznɪs 'stʌdɪz 35  
businessman/woman 'bɪznɪsmæn/'wʊmən 35  
butterfly 'bʌtəflaɪ 8  
button 'bʌtən 22  
by [how much] baɪ 41  
by [near] baɪ 90  
by [next to] baɪ 90  
by [not later than] baɪ 59  
by accident baɪ 'æksɪdənt 78

- by chance baɪ tʃɑːns 78  
 by hand baɪ hænd 78  
 by mistake baɪ mɪ'steɪk 78  
 by the way baɪ ðə weɪ 75  
 cabbage 'kæbɪdʒ 25  
 cabin crew 'kæbɪn kruː 47  
 cage keɪdʒ 8  
 calculate 'kælkjələɪt 60  
 calculation ,kælkjə'leɪʃən 60  
 calculator 'kælkjələɪtə 39, 60  
 calendar 'kælɪndə 39  
 calf kɑːf 25  
 call [describe sb] kɔːl 33  
 call [phone] kɔːl 52  
 call for sb kɔːl fɔː 'sʌmbɒdi 80  
 calm (person) kɑːm 11  
 calm (sea) kɑːm 50  
 camel 'kæməl 8  
 camping 'kæmpɪŋ 42  
 campsite 'kæmpsaɪt 73  
 can (of cola) kæn 63  
 can't help it kɑːnt help ɪt 76  
 can't stand kɑːnt stænd 67  
 canal kə'næl 6  
 cancel 'kænsəl 64  
 cancer 'kænsə 21  
 candidate 'kændɪdət 34  
 Cantonese ,kæntə'niːz 5  
 cap kæp 22  
 capital [city] 'kæpɪtəl 5  
 capital letter 'kæpɪtəl 'letə 4  
 captain 'kæptɪn 43  
 car park kɑː pɑːk 27  
 cardinal number 'kɑːdɪnəl  
     'nʌmbə 60  
 care keə 56  
 career aim kə'riəreɪm 96  
 careful 'keəfəl 71  
 careless 'keələs 71  
 Caribbean ,kæri'biːən 5  
 caring 'keərɪŋ 12  
 carpenter 'kɑːpɪntə 36  
 carpet 'kɑːpɪt 18  
 carrot 'kærət 25  
 carry guns 'kæri ɡʌnz 58  
 carry on (with sth) 'kæri ɒn 79  
 carton 'kɑːtən 63  
 case keɪs 100  
 cash kæʃ 20  
 cashpoint 'kæʃpɔɪnt 20, 73  
 castle 'kɑːsəl 49  
 casual 'kæʒjuəl 22  
 catch (a bus/train) kætʃ 29  
 catch (a criminal) kætʃ 55  
 cathedral kə'θiːdrəl 49  
 cause kɔːz 97  
 cave keɪv 6  
 CD player ,sɪ'diː 'pleɪə 32  
 celebrate 'seləbreɪt 15, 46  
 celebration ,selə'breɪʃən 15  
 celebrity sə'lebrətɪ 51  
 cellist 'tʃelɪst 45  
 cello 'tʃeləʊ 45  
 central heating 'sentrəl 'hiːtɪŋ  
     17  
 century 'sentʃəri 44, 59  
 cereal 'sɪəriəl 16  
 ceremony 'serɪməni 15  
 certificate sə'tɪfɪkət 3, 35  
 champion 'tʃæmpɪən 43  
 championship 'tʃæmpɪənʃɪp  
     43  
 chance [opportunity] tʃɑːns  
     86  
 chance [possibility that sth will  
     happen] tʃɑːns 86  
 change into sth tʃeɪndʒ 'ɪntə  
     'sʌmθɪŋ 22  
 change your mind tʃeɪndʒ jɔː  
     maɪnd 76  
 changing room 'tʃeɪndʒɪŋ ru:m  
     23  
 channel [TV] 'tʃænəl 51  
 character [good qualities]  
     'kærəktə 17  
 character [personality] 'kærəktə  
     11  
 charge v tʃɑːdʒ 20, 41  
 charming 'tʃɑːmɪŋ 17  
 chat n, v tʃæt 16, 72  
 chat show tʃæt ʃəʊ 51  
 check [examine] tʃek 20, 47  
 check out tʃek aʊt 48  
 checkout [online  
     shopping] 'tʃek aʊt 54  
 checkout [supermarket]  
     'tʃek aʊt 24  
 check your email tʃek jɔːr  
     'iːmeɪl 54  
 check-in (desk) 'tʃekɪn 47  
 cheek tʃiːk 9, 68  
 cheerful 'tʃiːəfəl 12  
 cheers [a toast] tʃiːəz 68  
 cheers [goodbye] tʃiːəz 68  
 cheers [thanks] tʃiːəz 64, 95  
 chef ʃef 26  
 chest tʃest 9  
 chest of drawers tʃest ɒv drɔːz  
     73  
 childhood 'tʃaɪldhʊd 14  
 chilly 'tʃɪli 7  
 chin tʃɪn 9  
 China 'tʃaɪnə 5  
 Chinese tʃaɪ'niːz 5  
 choice tʃɔɪs 18  
 chop tʃɒp 26  
 circle 'sɜːkəl 62  
 classical music 'klæsɪkəl  
     'mjuːzɪk 45  
 clean kliːn 1, 27  
 clean your teeth kliːn jɔː tiːθ  
     16  
 cleaner 'kliːnə 16  
 clear (sky) klɪə 7  
 clear sth up klɪə 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 19  
 clever 'klevə 11  
 click on (a link) klɪk ɒn 54  
 client 'klaɪənt 40  
 cliff klɪf 50  
 climate 'klaɪmət 6  
 climate change 'klaɪmət tʃeɪndʒ  
     57  
 close family kləʊs 'fæməli 13  
 clothes kləʊðz 23  
 cloud klaʊd 7  
 cloudy 'klaʊdi 7  
 coach kəʊtʃ 29  
 coast kəʊst 50  
 coconut 'kəʊkənət 25  
 coin kɔɪn 20  
 cold kəʊld 7  
 collar 'kɒlə 22  
 colleague 'kɒliːg 39  
 colourful 'kɒləfəl 71  
 comb your hair kəʊm jɔː heə 9  
 come out [be available] kʌm  
     aʊt 45, 51  
 come out [sun] kʌm aʊt 7  
 come round [visit] kʌm  
     raʊnd 16  
 comedy 'kɒmədi 44  
 comfortable 'kʌmfətəbəl 71  
 comma 'kɒmə 4  
 commence kə'mens 95  
 commit a crime kə'mɪt ə kraɪm  
     55  
 compare kəm'peə 97  
 compared with/to kəm'peəd wɪð/  
     tuː 97  
 comparison kəm'pærɪsən 97  
 competition ,kɒmpə'tɪʃən 43  
 complain kəm'pleɪn 29, 37, 77  
 complaint kəm'pleɪnt 29, 37  
 completely kəm'pliːtli 91  
 complicated 'kɒmplɪkeɪtɪd  
     44, 96  
 composer kəm'pəʊzə 45  
 concentrate 'kɒnsəntreɪt 77  
 conditions kən'dɪʃənz 37  
 conductor kən'dʌktə 45  
 confident 'kɒnfɪdənt 11  
 confirm kən'fɜːm 98  
 confused kən'fjuːzd 12, 89  
 confusing kən'fjuːzɪŋ 89  
 confusion kən'fjuːzən 12  
 congratulations  
     kən,grætʃu'leɪʃənz 68  
 conjunction kən'dʒʌŋkʃən 4  
 connect kə'nekt 54  
 connected to/with kə'nektɪd tuː/  
     wɪð 3  
 consequently 'kɒnseqwəntli  
     97  
 consider kən'sɪdə 87  
 consist of kən'sɪst ɒv 6, 46  
 consonant 'kɒnsənənt 34  
 constituency kən'stɪtjuːnsɪ 56  
 consultant kən'sʌltənt 37  
 contacts 'kɒntæktz 40  
 container kən'teɪnə 63  
 contents 'kɒntents 51, 63  
 continent 'kɒntɪnənt 5  
 contrast n 'kɒntrɑːst 6  
 contrast v 'kɒn'trɑːst 97  
 convenient kən'viːniənt 24, 29  
 convince kən'vɪns 88  
 cook n kʊk 26  
 cooker 'kʊkə 18, 26  
 cool kuːl 7  
 copy 'kɒpi 53  
 correct adj kə'rekt 69  
 correct v kə'rekt 32  
 cottage 'kɒtɪdʒ 17  
 cotton 'kɒtən 62  
 cough kɒf 21



- Could I speak to ...? kud aɪ spi:k tu: 52  
 (I) could not believe my eyes kud nɒt br'i:lv maɪ aɪz 76  
 Could you (possibly) ...? kud ju: 65  
 countable (noun) 'kauntəbəl 4  
 country of origin 'kʌntri ɒv 'brɪdʒɪn 96  
 countryside 'kʌntrɪsaɪd 28  
 couple [several] 'kʌpəl 15, 61, 63  
 courgette kə:'zet 25  
 course [sport] kɔ:s 42  
 course (of a meal) kɔ:s 48  
 court (of law) kɔ:t 55  
 court [sport] kɔ:t 42  
 cousin 'kʌzən 13  
 cover v 'kʌvə 6  
 crab kræb 25  
 crash [computer] kræʃ 53  
 crash into sth kræʃ 'ɪntə 'sʌmθɪŋ 30  
 create kri'eɪt 53, 57  
 creative kri'eɪtɪv 11, 12  
 creature 'kri:tʃə 8  
 credit card 'kredɪt kɑ:d 73  
 crime kraɪm 55  
 crime rate kraɪm reɪt 27  
 criminal 'krɪmɪnəl 55  
 crop krɒp 28  
 crossroads 'krɒsrəʊdz 73  
 crowded 'kraʊdɪd 27  
 cry kraɪ 9  
 cucumber 'kju:kʌmbə 25  
 cultural 'kʌltʃərəl 27, 71  
 culture 'kʌltʃə 27  
 cup [sport] kʌp 3  
 cupboard 'kʌbəd 18  
 cure n, v kjuə 72  
 curiosity ,kjuəri'nsəti 12  
 curious 'kjuəriəs 12  
 curly 'kɜ:li 10  
 currency 'kʌrənsɪ 20  
 current 'kʌrənt 13  
 currently 'kʌrəntli 40  
 cushion 'kʊʃən 18  
 custom 'kʌstəm 46  
 customary 'kʌstəməri 46  
 customs 'kʌstəmz 47  
 cut [computer] v kʌt 53  
 cut [injure] v kʌt 21  
 cut [reduce] v kʌt 56  
 CV ,si:'vi: 38, 96, 100  
 cycle 'saɪkəl 29  
 cyclist 'saɪklɪst 29  
 daily 'deɪli 1, 40, 51  
 damage n, v 'dæmɪdʒ 30  
 dangerous 'deɪndʒərəs 27  
 dancer 'dɑ:ntsə 70  
 dark dɑ:k 17  
 dark (hair) dɑ:k 10  
 date [day] deɪt 2  
 date [romantic meeting] deɪt 15  
 date of arrival/departure deɪt ɒv ə'raɪvəl/dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 96  
 date of birth deɪt ɒv bɜ:θ 96  
 day after day deɪ 'ɑ:ftə deɪ 75  
 day-to-day ,deɪtə'deɪ 37  
 dead ded 1, 14, 58  
 deaf def 84  
 deal with di:l wɪð 37  
 Dear Sir/Madam dɪə sɜ:/ 'mædəm 98  
 death deθ 58  
 decade 'dekeɪd 59  
 decimal 'desɪməl 60  
 decrease n 'di:kri:s 41  
 decrease v di:'kri:s 41  
 defeat n, v dɪ'fi:t 43  
 defend dɪ'fend 58  
 definite article 'defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkəl 4  
 definition ,defɪ'nɪʃən 3  
 degree [amount] dɪ'ɡri: 91  
 degree [university] dɪ'ɡri: 35  
 degree(s) [temperature] dɪ'ɡri: 6, 7  
 delay dɪ'leɪ 47, 64, 98  
 delete dɪ'li:t 54  
 delicious dɪ'lɪʃəs 26, 89  
 delighted dɪ'laɪtɪd 89  
 deliver dɪ'lɪvə 40  
 demand n dɪ'mɑ:nd 40  
 demand v dɪ'mɑ:nd 87  
 dentist 'dentɪst 36  
 depart dɪ'pɑ:t 95  
 departure dɪ'pɑ:tʃə 47  
 departures board dɪ'pɑ:tʃəz bɔ:d 47  
 depend (on sth) [not sure about sth] dɪ'pend 74, 77  
 depend on sb [need sb to support you] dɪ'pend ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 77  
 deposit dɪ'pɒzɪt 20  
 depressed dɪ'prest 12, 89  
 depressing dɪ'presɪŋ 89  
 depth depθ 61  
 design dɪ'zain 36  
 designer label dɪ'zainə 'leɪbəl 23  
 despite dɪ'spaɪt 93  
 dessert dɪ'zɜ:t 48  
 destination ,destɪ'neɪʃən 47  
 destroy dɪ'strɔɪ 57, 58  
 details 'di:teɪlz 98  
 detective dɪ'tektɪv 55  
 develop dɪ'veləp 70  
 development dɪ'veləpmənt 70  
 dial 'daɪəl 52  
 dialling code 'daɪəlɪŋ kəʊd 52  
 diary 'daɪəri 39  
 die daɪ 58  
 diet [lose weight] n, v 'daɪət 72  
 different from 'dɪfərənt frɒm 77  
 direct (a film) dɪ'rekt 44  
 direct sb dɪ'rekt 'sʌmbɒdi 30  
 directing dɪ'rektɪŋ 44  
 director (of a company) dɪ'rektə 70  
 director (of a film) dɪ'rektə 44  
 dirty 'dɜ:ti 1, 27  
 disadvantage ,dɪsəd'vɑ:ntɪdʒ 27  
 disagree ,dɪsə'ɡri: 66, 69  
 disappear ,dɪsə'piə 69  
 disappointed ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪd 12, 89  
 disappointing ,dɪsə'pɔɪntɪŋ 89  
 disappointment ,dɪsə'pɔɪntmənt 12  
 disc jockey (DJ) dɪsk 'dʒɔki 73  
 discuss dɪ'skʌs 70  
 discussion dɪ'skʌʃən 70  
 disease dɪ'zi:z 21  
 dishonest dɪ'sɒnɪst 11, 69  
 dislike n, v dɪ'slaɪk 67  
 display dɪ'spleɪ 46  
 distance 'dɪstəns 6, 61  
 disturb dɪ'stɜ:b 31  
 dive n, v daɪv 72  
 divide [maths] dɪ'vaɪd 60  
 divide [separate] dɪ'vaɪd 33  
 diving 'daɪvɪŋ 50  
 division dɪ'vɪʒən 60  
 divorce dɪ'vɔ:s 15  
 DJ (disc jockey) ,dɪ:'dʒeɪ 73  
 do [study] du: 33  
 do a bit/lot of (sightseeing/hiking etc.) du: ə bɪt/lɒt ɒv 42, 49  
 do a course du: ə kɔ:s 81  
 do an Internet search du: æn 'ɪntənət sɜ:tʃ 54  
 do exercise du: 'eksəsaɪz 42, 81  
 do homework du: 'həʊmwɜ:k 81  
 do housework du: 'həʊswɜ:k 16, 81  
 do not leave bags unattended du: nɒt li:v bægz ,ʌnə'tendɪd 31  
 do research du: rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35  
 do something/nothing du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 'nʌθɪŋ 81  
 do sth up du: 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 22  
 do the shopping du: ðə 'ʃɒpɪŋ 16  
 do the washing/ironing (etc.) du: ðə 'wɒʃɪŋ/'aɪəɪnɪŋ 16  
 do well du: wel 34  
 do your best du: jɔ: best 34, 81  
 do your hair/make-up du: jɔ: heə/meɪk ʌp 81  
 do/work overtime du:wɜ:k 'əʊvətaɪm 37  
 do/write an essay du:/raɪt æn 'eseɪ 34  
 document 'dɒkjəmənt 53  
 documentary ,dɒkjə'mentəri 51  
 dolphin 'dɒlfɪn 8  
 don't worry dəʊnt 'wʌrɪ 64  
 donkey 'dɒŋki 8  
 dot (in an email address) dɒt 54  
 double (double four nine) 'dʌbəl 60  
 double room 'dʌbəl ru:m 48  
 double-click ,dʌbəl'klɪk 53  
 down [further along] daʊn 61  
 down [to a lower place] daʊn 90



download ,daʊn'ləʊd 45, 54  
 downstairs ,daʊn'steəz 17  
 dozen 'dɒzən 63  
 Dr 'drɒktə 100  
 draw (a game) n, v drɔ: 43  
 draw (pictures) drɔ: 2  
 dreadful 'dredfəl 89  
 dream n, v dri:m 72  
 dress v dres 23, 33  
 dress in dres in 23  
 dress up dres ʌp 46  
 drop v drɒp 19  
 drop (of milk) drɒp 63  
 drought draʊt 57  
 drummer 'drʌmə 45  
 drums drʌmz 45  
 due to dju: tu: 94  
 dull dʌl 27  
 during 'dʒʊərɪŋ 59  
 duty free 'dʒu:ti fri: 47  
 duvet 'du:vet 18  
 e.g. i:'dʒi: 100  
 early (20s/30s, etc.) 'ɜ:li 14  
 earn ɜ:n 20, 37  
 earrings 'ɛərɪŋz 22, 73  
 east i:st 6  
 Earth [planet] ɜ:θ 6  
 eat in/out i:t in aʊt 16  
 economics ,i:kə'nɒmɪks 35  
 economist i'kɒnəmɪst 35, 70  
 economy i'kɒnəmi 41  
 effect i'fekt 12, 57, 97  
 efficient i'fɪʃənt 57  
 Egypt 'i:dʒɪpt 5  
 Egyptian i'dʒɪptʃən 5  
 elbow 'elbəʊ 9  
 elder 'eldə 13  
 elderly 'eldəli 14, 56  
 elect i'lekt 56  
 election i'lektʃən 56  
 electrical i'lektɪkəl 71  
 electrician ,ɪlekt'rɪʃən 36  
 elephant 'elɪfənt 8  
 embarrassed ɪm'bærəst 89  
 embarrassing ɪm'bærəsɪŋ 89  
 emergency i'mɜ:dʒənsi 52  
 emergency services i'mɜ:dʒənsi  
 'sɜ:vɪsɪz 36  
 emotion i'məʊʃən 12  
 emotional i'məʊʃənəl 12  
 emphasise 'emfəsaɪz 3  
 employ sb ɪm'plɔɪ 'sʌmbɒndi 38  
 employee ɪm'plɔɪi: 40  
 en suite ,ɒn'swi:t 18  
 enclose ɪn'kləʊz 98  
 encourage ɪn'kʌrɪdʒ 88  
 endangered animals  
 ɪn'deɪndʒəd 'æniməlz 8  
 end up ɛnd ʌp 30  
 enemy 'enəmi 58  
 energetic ,enə'dʒetɪk 12  
 energy 'enədʒi 57  
 engaged [busy] ɪn'geɪdʒd 52  
 engagement ɪn'geɪdʒmənt 15  
 engineer ,endʒɪ'nɪə 36  
 engineering ,endʒɪ'nɪərɪŋ 35  
 English 'ɪŋɡlɪʃ 5  
 enjoy (+ -ing) ɪn'dʒɔɪ 87

enjoyable ɪn'dʒɔɪəbəl 71  
 enormous i'noʊməs 61, 89  
 enquire about sth ɪn'kwɪəə  
 ə'baʊt 'sʌmθɪŋ 98  
 enrolment form ɪn'rɒlmənt  
 fɔ:m 96  
 enter (a password) 'entə 53  
 entertain ,entə'teɪn 44  
 entertainer ,entə'teɪnə 44  
 entertainment ,entə'teɪnmənt  
 44  
 entrance 'entrəns 24  
 entry form 'entri fɔ:m 96  
 environment ɪn'vaɪrənmənt 57  
 e-paper i:'peɪpə 51  
 equal adj 'i:kwəl 56  
 equals v 'i:kwəlz 60  
 equipment i'kwɪpmənt 86  
 escape i'skeɪp 55  
 essay 'eseɪ 35  
 essential i'senʃəl 54, 89  
 etc. et 'setərə 100  
 EU ,i:'ju: 100  
 Europe 'jʊərəp 5  
 even though 'i:vən ðəʊ 93  
 eventually i'ventʃuəli 92  
 ever since 'evə sɪns 13  
 exam ɪg'zæm 100  
 except for ɪk'sept fɔ: 75  
 excess baggage ɪk'ses  
 'bæɡɪdʒ 47  
 excessive ɪk'sesɪv 57  
 excuse n ɪk'skju:s 64  
 excuse me [attract  
 attention] ɪk'skju:z mi: 68  
 excuse me [say sorry] ɪk'skju:z  
 mi: 64  
 ex-girlfriend/wife (etc.) eks  
 'gɜ:lfrɛnd/waɪf 13  
 exhausted ɪg'zɔ:stɪd 27, 89  
 exist ɪg'zɪst 57  
 existence ɪg'zɪstəns 57  
 existing ɪg'zɪstɪŋ 53  
 exit (stop using an application)  
 v ɪk'sɪt 53  
 expand ɪk'spænd 40  
 expect ɪk'spekt 88  
 expecting a baby ɪk'spektɪŋ ə  
 'beɪbi 74  
 experience [knowledge]  
 ɪk'spɪəriəns 38, 86  
 experience [sth that happens to  
 you] ɪk'spɪəriəns 86  
 experiment v ɪk'sperɪmənt  
 34  
 expert 'ekspɜ:t 40  
 explain ɪk'spleɪn 32  
 explain the difference between X  
 and Y ɪk'spleɪn ðə 'dɪfərəns  
 bɪ'twi:n eks ænd waɪ 32  
 explanation ,eksplə'neɪʃən  
 2, 32  
 explode ɪk'spləʊd 58  
 explore ɪk'splɔ: 49  
 extremely ɪk'stri:mli 7, 91  
 facilities fə'sɪlətɪz 48  
 fail (an exam) v feɪl 34  
 fair [equal] feə 56

fair [hair] feə 10  
 fairly 'feəli 91  
 fall n, v fɔ:l 41  
 fall asleep fɔ:l ə'sli:p 16  
 fall in love fɔ:l ɪn lʌv 74  
 fall over fɔ:l ə'ʊvə 19, 79  
 famous feɪməs 71  
 fancy (doing) sth 'fænsɪ 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 44, 65, 99  
 FAQs ,efeɪ'kju:z 53  
 Far East ,fɑ:r 'i:st 5  
 fare feə 29  
 farewell ,feə'wel 68  
 farmhouse 'fɑ:mhaʊs 28  
 farming 'fɑ:mɪŋ 28  
 fascinating 'fæsɪneɪtɪŋ 89  
 fashionable 'fæʃənəbəl 71  
 fast asleep fɔ:st ə'sli:p 74  
 fasten 'fɑ:sən 47  
 fear n fiə 41  
 fee(s) fi: 20  
 feed fi:d 16, 31  
 feel [believe] fi:l 66  
 feel [experience] n, v fi:l 85  
 feel bad about sth fi:l bæd ə'baʊt  
 'sʌmθɪŋ 76  
 feel sick fi:l sɪk 21  
 feelings 'fi:lɪŋz 12  
 feet [measurement] fi:t 61  
 female 'fi:meɪl 33, 68  
 fence fens 28  
 festival 'festɪvəl 46  
 fiction 'fɪkʃən 44  
 field fi:ld 28  
 fifty-pence piece 'fɪftɪ pens pi:s  
 20  
 fight faɪt 58  
 figures (number) 'fɪgəz 41  
 file (computer) faɪl 53  
 file menu faɪl 'menju: 53  
 files faɪlz 39  
 filing cabinet 'faɪlɪŋ 'kæbɪnət  
 39  
 fill sth in fɪl 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 96  
 film director fɪlm dɪ'rektə 44  
 film-maker fɪlm 'meɪkə 73  
 filthy 'fɪliθi 1  
 final n 'faɪnəl 43  
 finally 'faɪnəli 92  
 find out faɪnd aʊt 79  
 fine n faɪn 55  
 fire brigade faɪə brɪ'geɪd 36  
 fireman/firefighter 'faɪəmən  
 'faɪəfaɪtə 36  
 fireworks 'faɪəwɜ:ks 46  
 firm adj fɜ:m 18  
 firm n fɜ:m 40  
 first language fɜ:st 'læŋɡwɪdʒ  
 5  
 first of all fɜ:st ɒv ɔ:l 92  
 first(ly) fɜ:st 92  
 fit adj fɪt 70  
 fit v fɪt 23  
 fitness 'fɪtnəs 70  
 fix fɪks 36  
 fixed (hours) fɪkst 37  
 flag flæg 62  
 flat n flæt 17

flautist 'flaʊtɪst 45  
 flavour 'fleɪvə 26  
 flight flait 29  
 flight number flait 'nʌmbə 47  
 flood flʌd 57  
 floor flɔː 18  
 flu fluː 21, 100  
 fluent 'fluːənt 34  
 flute fluːt 45  
 fly n flai 8  
 fly v flai 29  
 fog fɒg 7  
 foggy 'fɒgi 7  
 fold your arms fəʊld jɔːr ɑːmz 9  
 folk music fəʊk 'mjuːzɪk 45  
 footballer 'fʊtbɔːlə 70  
 footpath 'fʊtpɑːθ 28  
 for fɔː 59  
 for a start fɔːr ə stɑːt 92  
 for ages fɔːr 'eɪdʒɪz 59  
 for example fɔːr ɪg'zɑːmpəl 100  
 for fun fɔː fʌn 42  
 for instance fɔːr ɪnstəns 75  
 for one thing fɔː wʌn θɪŋ 92  
 for pleasure fɔː 'pleʒə 42  
 for the time being fɔː ðə taɪm 'biːɪŋ 59  
 forehead 'fɔːhed 9  
 forget fə'get 2, 19  
 former 'fɔːmə 40  
 fortnight 'fɔːtnaɪt 59  
 fortunately 'fɔːtʃənətli 16  
 forum 'fɔːrəm 51  
 fossil fuel 'fɒsəl 'fjuːəl 57  
 fountain 'faʊntɪn 49  
 fraction 'frækʃən 60  
 fragile 'frædʒaɪl 31  
 France frɑːns 5  
 freezing 'friːzɪŋ 7  
 French frenʃ 5  
 frequency 'friːkwəntsi 91  
 frequently 'friːkwəntli 91  
 fresh freʃ 24  
 fresh air freʃ ə 28  
 fridge frɪdʒ 100  
 fridge/freezer frɪdʒ 'friːzə 18  
 friendly 'frendli 11  
 friendship 'frendʃɪp 13  
 frightened 'fraɪtənd 12  
 frog frɒg 8  
 fry fraɪ 26  
 frying pan 'fraɪɪŋ pæn 26  
 full stop fʊl stɒp 4, 73  
 full-time 'fʊl'taɪm 38  
 fully-booked 'fʊli bukt 48  
 fur fɜː 62  
 furniture 'fɜːnɪtʃə 86  
 garlic 'gɑːlɪk 25  
 gate geɪt 28  
 gate (3/5/10, etc.) (airport) geɪt 47  
 gather 'gæðə 46  
 general election 'dʒenərəl ɪ'lektʃən 56  
 generalisation 'dʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃən 97  
 generation ,dʒenəreɪʃən 40  
 generous 'dʒenərəs 11

German 'dʒɜːmən 5  
 Germany 'dʒɜːməni 5  
 get [answer] get 83  
 get [arrive] get 83  
 get [become] get 83  
 get [do a task] get 83  
 get [fetch] get 83  
 get a job get ə dʒɒb 33  
 get away [escape] get ə'wei 55, 58  
 get better get 'betə 83  
 get divorced get dɪ'vɔːst 15  
 get dressed get drest 22, 69  
 get engaged get ɪn'geɪdʒd 15  
 get in [arrive] get ɪn 80, 83  
 get in [enter] get ɪn 29, 83  
 get in touch get ɪn tʌtʃ 83  
 get into trouble get ɪntə'trʌbəl 33  
 get lost get lɒst 30, 49  
 get married to sb get 'mæriəd tuː 'sʌmbəndi 13, 15  
 get off (a bus) get ɒf 29  
 get on (a bus) get ɒn 29  
 get on (with sb) get ɒn 13, 79  
 get out [leave] get aʊt 29, 83  
 get over sth get əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ 80  
 get rid of sth get rɪd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 75, 83  
 get sth back get 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk 83  
 get sth done get 'sʌmθɪŋ dʌn 83  
 get sth wrong get 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ 34, 83  
 get stuck get stʌk 27, 60  
 get through [make contact] get θruː 52  
 get through sth [finish] get θruː 'sʌmθɪŋ 34  
 get to know sb get tuː nəʊ 'sʌmbəndi 13, 15, 83  
 get to sleep get tuː sli:p 83  
 get together get tə'geðə 83, 99  
 get undressed get ʌn'drest 69  
 get up get ʌp 16  
 get used to sth get juːst tuː 'sʌmθɪŋ 67  
 get worse get wɜːs 19, 83  
 giant 'dʒaɪənt 61  
 giraffe dʒɪ'rɑːf 8  
 give [cause an effect] gɪv 82  
 give a speech/lecture (etc.) gɪv ə spiːtʃ/'lektʃə 82  
 give my regards/love to ... gɪv maɪ rɪ'gɑːdz/lʌv tuː 99  
 give sb advice gɪv 'sʌmbəndi əd'vaɪs 37  
 give sb a hand gɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə hænd 82  
 give sb a hug gɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə hʌg 82  
 give sb a kiss gɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə kɪs 72  
 give sb a ring gɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə rɪŋ 52, 72, 82  
 give sb a shock gɪv 'sʌmbəndi ə ʃɒk 82  
 give sb the sack gɪv 'sʌmbəndi ðə sæk 38

give sth away gɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'wei 79  
 give sth a push gɪv 'sʌmθɪŋ ə pʊʃ 82  
 give up (sth) [stop doing an activity] gɪv ʌp 43, 79  
 give up sth [leave a job] gɪv ʌp 'sʌmθɪŋ 15  
 global warming 'glɔːbəl 'wɔːmɪŋ 57  
 go [disappear] ɡəʊ 84  
 go [lead somewhere] ɡəʊ 84  
 go (out) for a walk/drive (etc.) ɡəʊ fɔːr ə wɔːk/draɪv 84  
 go (swimming/shopping, etc.) ɡəʊ 16, 42, 84  
 go and get [fetch] ɡəʊ ænd get 83, 84  
 go away [go on holiday] ɡəʊ ə'wei 79, 84  
 go away [leave] ɡəʊ ə'wei 79  
 go back ɡəʊ bæk 79, 84  
 go by bike/car (etc.) ɡəʊ baɪ/bɑːk kɑː 29  
 go down ɡəʊ daʊn 41  
 go for [choose] ɡəʊ fɔː 84  
 go for (a swim/drive, etc.) ɡəʊ fɔː 50, 84  
 go grey/bald/deaf (etc.) ɡəʊ greɪ/ bɔːld/def 84  
 go into business ɡəʊ ɪntə'bɪznɪs 35  
 go mad [become angry] ɡəʊ məd 84  
 go off [electricity] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go off [explode] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go off [go bad] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go off [ring] ɡəʊ ɒf 79  
 go on [happen] ɡəʊ ɒn 27, 84  
 go on (to do sth) ɡəʊ ɒn 33, 35  
 go on a diet ɡəʊ ɒn ə 'daɪət 72, 74  
 go online ɡəʊ ɒn'laɪn 54  
 go out [social activity] ɡəʊ aʊt 16, 49  
 go out [stop working] ɡəʊ aʊt 84  
 go out with sb ɡəʊ aʊt wɪð 'sʌmbəndi 15  
 go sightseeing ɡəʊ 'saɪtsiːɪŋ 49  
 go through ɡəʊ θruː 47  
 go to bed ɡəʊ tuː bed 16  
 go to sleep ɡəʊ tuː sli:p 16  
 go up ɡəʊ ʌp 41  
 go well/badly ɡəʊ wel/'bædli 84  
 go with sth ɡəʊ wɪð 'sʌmθɪŋ 23  
 go wrong ɡəʊ rɒŋ 15, 84  
 goalkeeper 'ɡəʊl,kiːpə 42  
 goat ɡəʊt 8  
 golf course ɡɒlf kɔːrs 42  
 good luck ɡʊd lʌk 68  
 good/bad at sth ɡʊd/bæd æt 'sʌmθɪŋ 26, 77  
 good-looking ɡʊd'lʊkɪŋ 10  
 gorgeous 'ɡɔːdʒəs 10  
 govern 'ɡʌvən 70



government 'gʌvənmənt 56, 70  
 GP 'dʒi:'pi: 36  
 grade greɪd 34, 35  
 gradual(ly) 'grædʒʊəl 41  
 graduate n 'grædʒʊət 35, 98  
 grant [allow] grɑ:nt 95  
 grapes greɪps 25  
 grass grɑ:s 28  
 great greɪt 95  
 great fun greɪt fʌn 74  
 great importance greɪt ɪm'pɔ:tənts 74  
 Greece gri:s 5  
 Greek gri:k 5  
 greenhouse effect 'gri:nhaʊs rɪ'fekt 57  
 greenhouse gases 'gri:nhaʊs 'gæsɪz 57  
 greet gri:t 68  
 greeting 'gri:tɪŋ 68  
 grey greɪ 62  
 grill n, v grɪl 26  
 ground graʊnd 28  
 growing 'grəʊɪŋ 40, 41  
 guess n, v ges 3, 72  
 guidebook 'gaɪdbʊk 49  
 guilty 'gɪlti 55  
 guitar gi'tɑ: 45  
 guitarist gi'tɑ:rɪst 45  
 gun ɡʌn 36, 58  
 gym dʒɪm 42, 100  
 haggle 'hægl̩ 24  
 haircut 'heəkʌt 73  
 hairdresser 'heə,dresə 73  
 hairdryer 'heə,draɪə 73  
 half ha:f 60  
 half a dozen ha:f ə 'dɒzən 63  
 hand luggage hænd 'lʌgɪdʒ 47  
 hand sth out hænd 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80  
 handle v 'hændəl 37  
 handsome 'hænsəm 10  
 handwriting 'hænd,raɪtɪŋ 96  
 hang around hæŋ ə'raʊnd 80  
 happiness 'hæpməs 70  
 harbour 'hɑ:bə 46  
 hard drive/disk hɑ:d draɪv/dɪsk 53  
 hard work hɑ:d wɜ:k 34  
 hardly ever 'hɑ:dli 'evə 91  
 hard-working ,hɑ:d'wɜ:kɪŋ 11  
 hate heɪt 67, 87  
 have a (swim/drink, etc.) hæv ə 50  
 have a good ear for language hæv ə ɡʊd ɪə fɔ: 'læŋgwɪdʒ 34  
 have a great/nice/terrible time hæv ə greɪt/nɑɪs/'terəbəl taɪm 49  
 have a look hæv ə lʊk 81  
 have a look round hæv ə lʊk raʊnd 49  
 have a wash/shower etc. hæv ə wɒʃ/ʃaʊə 16, 81  
 have a word with sb hæv ə wɜ:d wɪð 'sʌmbɒdi 76  
 have an early night hæv ən 'ɜ:li naɪt 16

have children hæv 'tʃɪldrən 74  
 have got sth on hæv ɡɒt 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 23  
 have no idea hæv nəʊ aɪ'dɪə 76  
 have something/nothing in common hæv 'sʌmθɪŋ/'nʌθɪŋ m 'kɒmən 67  
 have time for sth hæv taɪm fɔ: 'sʌmθɪŋ 59  
 headache 'hedeɪk 21  
 headline 'hedlɑ:m 51  
 headquarters ,hed'kwɔ:təz 40  
 hear hɪə 85  
 heart [in the body] hɑ:t 21  
 heart of somewhere hɑ:t ɒv 'sʌmwɛə 48, 58  
 heart attack hɑ:t ə'tæk 21  
 heat v hi:t 17  
 heavy (rain) 'hevi 7  
 heavy (traffic) 'hevi 74  
 Hebrew 'hi:brʊ: 5  
 heel hi:l 9  
 height haɪt 10, 61  
 held [organised] held 46  
 help help 88  
 helpful 'helpfəl 71  
 hen hen 25  
 hi haɪ 99  
 hide haɪd 58  
 high (mountain) haɪ 61  
 highlight 'haɪlaɪt 32  
 highlighter pen 'haɪ,laɪtə pen 1, 32  
 hill hɪl 28  
 hips hɪps 9  
 hire 'haɪə 20  
 historic monument hɪ'stɔ:rɪk 'mɒnjəmənt 49  
 hit hit 19, 55  
 hold an election həʊld ən rɪ'leɪʃən 56  
 hold on [wait] həʊld ɒn 80  
 hold-up həʊld ʌp 64  
 honest 'ɒnɪst 11, 69  
 honeymoon 'hɑ:nɪmu:n 15  
 hope that ... həʊp ðæt 88  
 hope to do sth həʊp tu: du: 'sʌmθɪŋ 87, 99  
 hopeful 'həʊpfəl 12  
 hopeless 'həʊpləs 19, 28  
 horrible 'hɒrəbəl 26  
 horror film 'hɒrə fɪlm 44  
 housework 'haʊswɜ:k 16  
 How about ...? [making a suggestion] hɑʊ ə'baʊt 65, 68  
 How about you? [asking sb sth] hɑʊ ə'baʊt ju: 68  
 How are things? hɑʊ ə: θɪŋz 68  
 How do you feel about ...? hɑʊ du: ju: fi:l ə'baʊt 66  
 How long/wide (etc.) is ...? hɑʊ lɒŋ/waɪd x ɪz 61  
 How's it going? hɑʊz ɪt 'gəʊɪŋ 68  
 however haʊ'evə 93, 97  
 hug hʌɡ 82

huge hju:dʒ 61, 89  
 humid 'hju:mɪd 7  
 hundred 'hʌndrəd 60  
 hurry (up) 'hʌrɪ 79  
 hurt v hɜ:t 21  
 I am pleased to inform you ... aɪ æm plɪzɪd tu: mɪ'fɔ:m ju: 98  
 I am writing in response to ... aɪ ,æm 'raɪtɪŋ m rɪ'spɒns tu: 98  
 I am writing to ... aɪ æm 'raɪtɪŋ tu: 98  
 I beg your pardon aɪ beg ʒɔ: 'pɔ:dən 64  
 I bet aɪ bet 95  
 I don't believe it aɪ dəʊnt brɪ'li:v ɪt 76  
 I don't fancy that aɪ dəʊnt 'fænsɪ ðæt 65  
 I don't mind aɪ dəʊnt maɪnd 65  
 I look forward to hearing from you aɪ lʊk 'fɔ:wəd tu: 'hɪəriŋ frɒm ju: 98  
 I must apologise for ... aɪ mʌst ə'pɒlədʒaɪz fɔ: 64  
 I regret to inform you ... aɪ rɪ'ɡret tu: mɪ'fɔ:m ju: 98  
 I see what you mean aɪ si: wɒt ju: mi:n 66  
 I suppose so aɪ sə'pəʊz səʊ 76  
 I was wondering if you could ... aɪ wɒz 'wʌndərɪŋ ɪf ju: kʊd 65  
 I wonder if you could ... aɪ 'wʌndər ɪf ju: kʊd 65  
 I would be grateful if you could ... aɪ wʊd bi: 'ɡreɪtful ɪf ju: kʊd 98  
 i.e. aɪ'i: 100  
 I'd rather ... aɪd 'rɑ:ðə 65  
 I'll have (chicken/fish, etc.) aɪl hæv 48  
 I'll leave it aɪl li:v ɪt 23  
 I'll take it aɪl teɪk ɪt 23  
 I'm afraid I can't aɪm ə'freɪd aɪ kɑ:nt 65  
 I'm being served aɪm 'bi:ŋ sɜ:vɪd 23  
 I'm looking for ... aɪm 'lʊkɪŋ fɔ: 23  
 I'm sorry aɪm 'sɔ:ri 64  
 I'm sorry I'm late aɪm 'sɔ:ri aɪm leɪt 64  
 ice aɪs 7  
 ice hockey aɪs 'hɒki 42, 73  
 icon 'aɪkɒn 53  
 icy 'aɪsi 7  
 ID aɪ'di: 100  
 ID card aɪ'di: kɑ:d 73  
 if I were you ɪf aɪ wɜ: ju: 75  
 if you like ɪf ju: laɪk 65  
 ill ɪl 70  
 illegal rɪ'li:ɡəl 69  
 illness 'ɪlnəs 21, 70  
 image 'ɪmɪdʒ 40  
 imagine ɪ'mædʒɪn 87  
 immediately ɪ'mi:diətli 54  
 impatient ɪm'peɪʃənt 11  
 improve ɪm'pru:v 70  
 improvement ɪm'pru:vmənt 70



- in [place] in 90  
in a bad mood in ə bæd mu:d 19  
in a hurry in ə 'hʌrɪ 27, 78  
in a moment in ə 'mɒmənt 78  
in a row in ə rəʊ 41  
in a week's/month's (etc.) time in ə wi:k/s'mʌntθs taɪm 59, 75, 99  
in addition (to) in ə'dɪʃən 93  
in advance in əd'vʌns 48  
in black/blue/brown (etc.) in blæk/blu:/braʊn 22  
in business in 'bɪznɪs 78  
in case in keɪs 94  
in charge of in tʃɑ:dʒ əv 37  
in contrast in 'kɒntrəst 97  
in detail in 'di:teɪl 78  
in fact in fækt 99  
in fashion in 'fæʃən 23  
in future in 'fju:tʃə 78  
in general in 'dʒenərəl 75, 97  
in large quantities in lu:dʒ 'kwɒntətɪz 63  
in love in lʌv 15  
in my opinion in maɪ ə'pɪnjən 66  
in order to in 'ɔ:də tu: 94  
in other words in 'ʌðə wɜ:dz 100  
in progress in 'prɒgres 31  
in response to in rɪ'spɒns tu: 98  
in spite of in spaɪt əv 93  
in tears in tiəz 78  
in that case in ðæt keɪs 76  
in the end in ði end 14, 78, 92  
in the past in ðə pɑ:st 33, 97  
in the wild in ðə waɪld 8  
in the world in ðə wɜ:ld 6  
in time in taɪm 59, 78  
in writing in 'raɪtɪŋ 98  
inability in'æbɪləti 70  
inch ɪntʃ 61  
include ɪn'klu:d 48  
income 'ɪŋkʌm 37  
income tax 'ɪŋkʌm tæks 37, 73  
incorrect ɪn'kɔ:ekt 69  
increase n 'ɪnkri:s 34, 41  
increase v 'ɪnkri:s 41  
incredible ɪn'kredɪbəl 43  
incredibly ɪn'kredɪbli 91  
indefinite article ɪn'defɪnət 'ɑ:tɪkəl 4  
individual ɪndɪ'vɪdʒʊəl 43  
inflation ɪn'fleɪʃən 41  
ingredients ɪn'grɪ:diənts 26  
injure ɪndʒə 30  
injury ɪndʒəri 30  
innocent ɪnəsənt 55  
insect ɪnsekt 8  
inside lane ɪnsaɪd leɪn 30  
insist on doing sth ɪn'sɪst ɒn 'du:ɪŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ 87  
install ɪn'stɔ:l 36, 53  
instant messaging ɪnstənt 'mesɪdʒɪŋ 54  
instead ɪn'sted 16  
intelligent ɪn'telɪdʒənt 11  
intend ɪn'tend 87  
interest n ɪn'trəst 41  
interest v ɪn'trəst 67  
interest rate ɪn'trəst reɪt 41  
interested in ɪn'trəstɪd ɪn 67, 77  
interests ɪn'trəsts 67, 96  
internet access ɪntənət 'ækses 48  
interrupt ɪntə'rʌpt 64  
interview ɪntə'vju: 38  
into ɪntə 90  
introduce sb ɪntrə'dju:s 'sʌmbɒdi 68  
invent ɪn'vent 70, 80  
invention ɪn'venʃən 70  
invoice ɪn'vɔɪs 39  
involve ɪn'vɒlv 39, 46  
ironing ɪə'niŋ 16  
irregular ɪ'regjələ 69  
irregular (verb) ɪ'regjələ 4  
Is that (Joe, Emma, etc ...?) ɪz ðæt 52  
-ish ɪʃ 10  
ISP ɪs'pi: 54, 100  
Israel ɪz'reɪl 5  
Israeli ɪz'reɪli 5  
it/that depends ɪt/ðæt dɪ'pendz 76  
it seems to me ɪt si:mz tu: mi: 97  
Italian ɪ'tæliən 5  
Italy ɪ'tæli 5  
item ɪtəm 24, 54  
jail dʒeɪl 55  
Japan dʒə'pæn 5  
Japanese ˌdʒæpə'ni:z 5  
jar dʒɑ: 63  
jealous ˌdʒeləs 12  
jealousy ˌdʒeləsi 12  
jogging ˌdʒɒŋɪŋ 42  
join [become a member] dʒɔɪn 36  
join [do sth with others] dʒɔɪn 99  
journalist ˌdʒɜ:nəlɪst 51  
journey ˌdʒɜ:ni 29  
judge dʒʌdʒ 55  
jug dʒʌg 63  
jumper ˌdʒʌmpə 22  
junction ˌdʒʌŋkʃən 30  
junk mail dʒʌŋk meɪl 54  
jury ˌdʒuəri 55  
just as dʒʌst æz 92  
keen on ki:n ɒn 67  
keep [look after] ki:p 28  
keep [stay in a place/condition] ki:p 82  
keep (on) doing sth ki:p 'du:ɪŋ 'sʌmθɪŋ 82  
keep a promise ki:p ə 'prɒmɪs 72  
keep a secret ki:p ə 'si:kret 82  
keep in touch ki:p ɪn tʌtʃ 82  
keep off sth ki:p ɒf 'sʌmθɪŋ 31  
keep right/left ki:p raɪt/left 31  
keep sb fit ki:p 'sʌmbɒdi fɪt 42  
keep sth up ki:p 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 82  
kettle 'ketəl 18  
keyboard ˌki:bɔ:d 39, 45, 53  
keyboard player ˌki:bɔ:d 'pleɪə 45  
(I'm/you're, etc.) kidding ˌkɪdɪŋ 76  
kids kɪdz 95  
kill kɪl 58  
kind kaɪnd 11  
kind of kaɪnd əv 76  
Kind regards kaɪnd rɪ'gʊ:dz 98  
kiss n, v kɪs 72  
kitten ˌkɪtən 2  
knee ni: 9  
knowledge (of sth) ˌnɒlɪdʒ 86  
Korean kə'reɪən 5  
lab læb 35, 100  
laboratory ˌləbərətəri 35  
ladder ˌlædə 62  
lamb læm 25  
land v lænd 47  
landing ˌlændɪŋ 47  
landing card ˌlændɪŋ kɑ:d 96  
landline ˌlændlaɪn 52  
landscape ˌlændskeɪp 6  
lane (on a road) leɪn 30  
laptop ˌlæptɒp 53  
large number/amount lu:dʒ ˌnʌmbə/ə'maʊnt 74  
last v lɑ:st 35, 46, 59  
last long lɑ:st lɒŋ 59  
late (50s/60s, etc.) leɪt 14  
lately ˌleɪtli 59  
latest ˌleɪtɪst 44  
laugh v lɑ:f 9  
law lɔ: 35  
lawyer ˌlɔ:ɪ 36  
lazy ˌleɪzi 11  
lead [be in front] li:d 43  
leader ˌli:də 56  
league li:g 43  
lean li:n 31  
leather ˌledə 62  
leave [end a relationship] li:v 15  
leave (a place) li:v 33  
leave a message li:v ə 'mesɪdʒ 52  
leave sb/sth out li:v 'sʌmbɒdi/ 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 80  
leave sth somewhere li:v 'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmweə 19  
leaves (on a tree) li:vz 28  
lecturer ˌlektʃərə 35, 36  
legal ˌli:gəl 69  
lemon ˌlemən 25  
lend lend 32  
length leŋθ 61  
leopard ˌlepəd 8  
let [allow] let 14  
let you know let ju: nəʊ 99  
lettuce ˌletɪs 25  
library ˌlaɪbrəri 35  
lie down laɪ daʊn 79  
lift n lɪft 17  
light [not dark] laɪt 17  
light [not much] laɪt 7, 74  
light lunch laɪt lʌntʃ 16

- lightning 'laɪtnɪŋ 7  
 like [similar to] laɪk 85  
 likely 'laɪkli 24  
 limited number/amount/choice  
 'lɪmɪtɪd 'nʌmbəʔə'maʊnt/tʃɔɪs  
 74  
 limited vocabulary  
 'lɪmɪtɪd və'kæbjələri 74  
 link (computer) lɪŋk 54  
 link word lɪŋk wɜ:d 4  
 lion 'laɪən 8  
 lips lɪps 9  
 listen [pay attention] 'lɪsən 85  
 literature 'lɪtrətʃə 44  
 live adj laɪv 45  
 lively 'laɪvli 27, 49  
 liver 'lɪvə 21  
 loads of sth ləʊdz ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 39  
 loan ləʊn 41  
 location ləʊ'keɪʃən 17  
 lock v lɒk 69  
 log in/on lɒg ɪn/ɒn 53  
 log off/out lɒg ɒf/ʌʊt 53  
 look n, v lʊk 85  
 look after sb lʊk 'ɑ:ftə  
 'sʌmbədi 80  
 look sth up lʊk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 3,  
 32, 79  
 loose lu:s 23  
 lorry 'lɔ:ri 29  
 lose (a game) lu:z 43  
 lose weight lu:z weɪt 74  
 loser 'lu:zə 43  
 loss lɒs 41  
 loud noise laʊd nɔɪz 74  
 love v lʌv 67  
 Love (greeting) lʌv 99  
 luckily 'lʌkəli 16  
 luggage 'lʌgɪdʒ 47  
 lung cancer lʌŋ 'kænsə 21  
 lungs lʌŋz 21  
 lyrics 'lɪrɪks 45  
 mad about sb məd ə'baʊt  
 'sʌmbədi 77  
 magnificent məg'nɪfɪsənt 49  
 main course meɪn kɔ:s 48  
 main road meɪn rəʊd 30  
 mainly 'meɪnli 52  
 majority mə'dʒɔ:rəti 60  
 make [cause sb to do sth] meɪk  
 24, 81  
 make [force sb to do sth] meɪk  
 81  
 make a comparison meɪk ə  
 kəm'pærɪsən 97  
 make a decision meɪk ə  
 dɪ'sɪʒən 81  
 make a mistake meɪk ə mɪ'steɪk  
 81  
 make a noise meɪk ə nɔɪz 81  
 make a profit/loss  
 meɪk ə 'prɒfɪt/lɒs 41  
 make an attempt  
 meɪk ən ə'tempt 72  
 make an effort meɪk ən 'efət  
 81  
 make friends meɪk frendz 81  
 make generalisations  
 meɪk ,dʒenərələɪ'zeɪʃənz 97  
 make it meɪk ɪt 95  
 make (money) meɪk 37  
 make sth up meɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 ʌp 80  
 make the bed meɪk ðə bed 16  
 make up your mind  
 meɪk ʌp jɔ: maɪnd 75, 81  
 make yourself understood  
 meɪk jɔ:'self ,ʌndə'stʊd 34  
 make-up 'meɪkʌp 16  
 male meɪl 33, 68  
 manage [run a business]  
 'mænɪdʒ 70  
 manage [succeed in doing sth]  
 'mænɪdʒ 14  
 management 'mænɪdʒmənt 70  
 Mandarin 'mændərɪn 5  
 marital status 'mæɪrɪtəl 'steɪtəs  
 96  
 mark [grade] mɑ:k 34  
 market 'mɑ:kɪt 49  
 marry 'mæri 15  
 marvellous 'mɑ:vələs 89  
 match v mætʃ 23  
 mate meɪt 13, 95  
 material mə'tɪəriəl 62  
 maths mæθs 100  
 me neither mi:'naɪðə 67  
 me too mi:tu: 67  
 meal mi:l 16  
 mean adj mi:n 11  
 mean v mi:n 32  
 meaning 'mi:nɪŋ 32  
 measure 'meʒə 32  
 mechanic mi'kæntɪk 36  
 media reporting  
 'mi:diə rɪ'pɔ:tɪŋ 51  
 medicine [the subject] 'medsən  
 35  
 medicine [to treat an illness]  
 'medsən 21  
 medium [meat] 'mi:diəm 48  
 medium height 'mi:diəm haɪt  
 10  
 melon 'melən 25  
 mend mend 36  
 mention 'menʃən 88  
 mess mes 2  
 metal 'metəl 62  
 mice maɪs 8  
 mid (30s/40s, etc.) mɪd 14  
 Middle East ,mɪdəl'i:st 5  
 middle-aged ,mɪdəl'eɪdʒd 14  
 mild maɪld 7  
 mile maɪl 61  
 million 'mɪljən 60  
 mind v maɪnd 67  
 mind (+ -ing) maɪnd 87  
 mind the step maɪnd ðə step  
 31  
 mind your head maɪnd jɔ: hed  
 31  
 minimum wage  
 'mɪnɪməm weɪdʒ 37  
 minor (offence) 'maɪnə 55  
 minority maɪ'nɔ:rəti 60  
 minus 'maɪnəs 6  
 minus adj 'maɪnəs 60  
 miserable 'mɪzərəbəl 12  
 mishear mɪs'hɪə 69  
 miss [avoid] mɪs 82  
 miss [not hear] mɪs 82  
 miss sb mɪs 'sʌmbədi 82  
 miss a chance/opportunity  
 mɪs ə tʃɑ:ns/ɔ'pɔ:tjʊ:nəti 82  
 miss the bus/train (etc.)  
 mɪs ðə bʌs/treɪn 19, 29, 74  
 missing 'mɪsɪŋ 58  
 misunderstand ,mɪsʌndə'stænd  
 69  
 mix n mɪks 27  
 mix sth up mɪks 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 2  
 mobile edition 'məʊbaɪl ɪ'dɪʃən  
 51  
 mobile number  
 'məʊbaɪl 'nʌmbə 52  
 monkey 'mʌŋki 8  
 monthly 'mʌntθli 51  
 mood mu:d 12  
 mosque mɒsk 49  
 mosquito mə'ski:təʊ 8  
 mostly 'məʊstli 52  
 mother tongue 'mʌðə tʌŋ 73  
 mother/brother/son-in-law  
 'mʌðə/'brʌðə/sʌn ɪn lɔ: 13  
 motorbike 'məʊtəbaɪk 29  
 mouse (animal) maʊs 8  
 mouse (computer) maʊs 53  
 mouse mat maʊs mæt 53  
 move mu:v 17  
 MP ,em'pi: 56, 100  
 Mr 'mɪstə 100  
 Mrs 'mɪsɪz 100  
 multiplication ,mʌltɪplɪ'keɪʃən  
 60  
 multiplied by 'mʌltɪplaɪd baɪ  
 60  
 murder n, v 'mɜ:də 55  
 murderer 'mɜ:dərə 55  
 mushroom 'mʌʃru:m 25  
 musical 'mju:zɪkəl 71  
 mussels 'mʌsəlz 25  
 my view/feeling is  
 maɪ vju:/'fi:lɪŋ ɪz 66  
 narrow 'nærəʊ 10, 61  
 national 'næʃənəl 51, 62, 71  
 navy [army] 'neɪvi 36  
 navy blue 'neɪvi blu: 62  
 nearest 'nɪəɪst 61  
 nearly 'nɪəli 14  
 necessary 'nesəsəri 2  
 neck nek 9  
 necklace 'nekləs 22  
 negative 'negətɪv 11  
 neither do/am/can I 'naɪðə du:/  
 æm/kæn aɪ 67  
 nephew 'nefju: 13  
 nervous 'nɜ:vəs 11  
 net net 42  
 never mind 'nevə maɪnd 64  
 news nju:z 86  
 next time nekst taɪm 59  
 nice naɪs 11  
 nice to meet you  
 naɪs tu: mi:t ju: 68  
 niece ni:s 13  
 night after night naɪt 'ɑ:ftə naɪt  
 75

- nightlife 'naɪtlaɪf 27  
 nil nil 43  
 nine-to-five adj naɪn tuː faɪv 37  
 no entry nəʊ 'entri 31  
 no exit nəʊ 'eksɪt 31  
 no parking nəʊ 'pɑːkɪŋ 31  
 no problem nəʊ 'prɒbləm 64, 65  
 no vacancies nəʊ 'veɪkəntsɪz 31  
 no way/chance nəʊ weɪ/tʃaːns 76  
 nod your head nɒd jɔː hed 9  
 normal 'nɔːməl 71  
 north nɔːθ 6  
 north-east nɔːθ 'iːst 6  
 north-west nɔːθ 'west 6  
 not at all nɒt æt ɔːl 64  
 not (so) bad nɒt bæd 68  
 not really nɒt 'riəli 76  
 note [money] nəʊt 20  
 nothing to declare 'nʌθɪŋ tuː dɪ'kleə 47  
 notice n 'nəʊtɪs 31  
 notice v 'nəʊtɪs 88  
 noticeboard 'nəʊtɪsbɔːd 39  
 nought nɔːt 60  
 noun naʊn 4  
 novel 'nɒvəl 44  
 now and again naʊ ænd ə'gen 75  
 now and then naʊ ænd ðen 75  
 nowadays 'naʊədeɪz 59, 97  
 nowhere to park 'nəʊweə tuː pɑːk 27  
 nurse nɜːs 36  
 nursery school 'nɜːsəri skuːl 33  
 obesity ə'biːsəti 97  
 object n 'ɒbdʒɪkt 62  
 occasionally ə'keɪzənəli 91  
 ocean 'əʊʃən 6  
 octopus 'ɒktəpəs 8  
 of course ɒf kɔːs 65  
 off [absent] ɒf 37, 39  
 offence ə'fens 55  
 offer 'ɒfə 87  
 official ə'fɪʃl 3  
 oh [0] əʊ 60  
 oil [fuel] ɔɪl 57  
 oil [on food] ɔɪl 25  
 old friend əʊld frend 13  
 olives 'ɒlɪvz 25  
 omit ə'mɪt 80  
 on [place] ɒn 90  
 on and off ɒn ænd ɒf 75  
 on board ɒn bɔːd 78  
 on business ɒn 'bɪznɪs 78  
 on display ɒn dɪ'spleɪ 78  
 on earth ɒn ɜːθ 6  
 on fire ɒn 'faɪə 78  
 on my/your own ɒn maɪ/jɔːr əʊn 15, 96  
 on purpose ɒn 'pɜːpəs 78  
 on record ɒn 'rekɔːd 57  
 on strike ɒn straɪk 78  
 on the first/second (etc.) floor ɒn ðə fɜːst/'sekənd flɔː 17  
 on the Internet ɒn ði 'ɪntənɪt 54  
 on the one hand ɒn ðə wʌn hænd 97  
 on the other hand ɒn ði 'ʌðə hænd 97  
 on the outskirts ɒn ði 'aʊtskɜːts 17  
 on the phone ɒn ðə fəʊn 52, 78  
 on the way ɒn ðə weɪ 30  
 on the whole ɒn ðə həʊl 75, 97  
 on time ɒn taɪm 59, 78  
 once wʌns 68  
 once a week/month (etc.) wʌns ə wɪk/mʌnθ 16  
 once again wʌns ə'gen 99  
 once or twice wʌns ɔː twaɪs 75  
 one day wʌn deɪ 59  
 one of the advantages of ... wʌn ɒv ði əd'vɑːntɪdʒɪz ɒv 97  
 onion 'ʌnʃən 25  
 only child 'əʊnli tʃaɪld 13  
 open space 'əʊpən speɪs 28  
 opera (singer) 'ɒpərə 45  
 operate on sb 'ɒpəreɪt ɒn 'sʌmbɒdi 36  
 operating system 'ɒpəreɪtɪŋ 'sɪstəm 53  
 operation ,ɒpə'reɪʃən 21  
 opposite 'ɒpəzɪt 1  
 or so ɔː səʊ 95  
 orchestra 'ɔːkɪstrə 45  
 ordinary 'ɔːdɪnəri 10  
 organisation ,ɔːgənəɪ'zeɪʃən 39  
 organise 'ɔːgənəɪz 39  
 otherwise 'ʌðəwaɪz 94  
 out [not there] aʊt 52  
 out of aʊt ɒv 90  
 out of order aʊt ɒv 'ɔːdə 19, 31  
 out of the blue aʊt ɒv ðə bluː 75  
 out of work aʊt ɒv wɜːk 38  
 out-of-date ,aʊtəv'deɪt 78  
 outside lane 'aʊtsaɪd leɪn 30  
 outstanding ,aʊt'stændɪŋ 43  
 oven 'ʌvən 18, 26  
 over [more than] 'əʊvə 6  
 over [movement] 'əʊvə 90  
 overcharge ,əʊvə'tʃɑːdʒ 69  
 overhead locker 'əʊvəhed 'lɒkə 47  
 oversleep ,əʊvə'sliːp 64  
 overtake ,əʊvə'teɪk 30  
 overtime 'əʊvətəɪm 37  
 overweight ,əʊvə'weɪt 10  
 owe əʊ 20  
 own adj əʊn 18, 38  
 own v əʊn 17, 28, 38  
 owner 'əʊnə 38  
 pack pæk 69  
 packed pækt 49  
 packet 'pækɪt 63  
 pain peɪn 21  
 painful 'peɪnfəl 21, 71  
 painless 'peɪnləs 71  
 pair peə 63  
 palace 'pælɪs 49  
 paper [newspaper] 'peɪpə 51  
 paperwork 'peɪpəwɜːk 39  
 parade pə'reɪd 46  
 parcel 'pɑːsəl 31  
 parked car pɑːkt kɑː 30  
 parrot 'pærət 8  
 part of speech pɑːt ɒv spiːtʃ 3  
 partly 'pɑːtli 66  
 partner 'pɑːtnə 32  
 part-time 'pɑːt'taɪm 38  
 pass an exam pɑːs æn ɪg'zæm 34  
 passenger 'pæsəndʒə 47  
 password 'pɑːswɜːd 53  
 paste peɪst 53  
 patient adj 'peɪʃənt 11  
 patient n 'peɪʃənt 21  
 pause pɔːz 4  
 pavement 'peɪvmənt 30  
 pay n, v peɪ 37  
 pay attention peɪ ə'tenʃən 76  
 pay back peɪ bæk 41  
 pay rise peɪ raɪz 38  
 PC 'piːsiː 53, 100  
 peace and quiet piːs ænd 'kwaɪət 75  
 peaceful 'piːsfəl 71  
 peach piːtʃ 25  
 pear peə 25  
 peas piːz 25  
 pedestrian pə'destrɪən 30  
 pedestrian crossing pə'destrɪən 'krɒsɪŋ 30  
 peel piːl 26  
 pencil sharpener 'pensəl 'ʃuːpənə 32  
 per cent pə'sent 41, 60  
 percentage pə'sentɪdʒ 41  
 perform pə'fɔːm 45  
 performance pə'fɔːməns 45  
 permanent 'pɜːmənənt 1  
 permission pə'mɪʃən 65  
 personal (opinion) 'pɜːsənəl 71  
 personal details 'pɜːsənəl 'diːteɪlz 96  
 personal statement 'pɜːsənəl 'steɪtmənt 96  
 personally 'pɜːsənəli 66  
 persuade pə'sweɪd 88  
 pet pet 8  
 phone fəʊn 100  
 phone sb back fəʊn 'sʌmbɒdi bæk 52  
 phonemic symbol fə'niːmɪk 'sɪmbəl 3, 4  
 photo 'fəʊtəʊ 100  
 photocopier 'fəʊtəʊ,kɒpiə 39  
 phrasal verb 'freɪzəl vɜːb 4  
 phrase freɪz 3, 4  
 pianist 'piːənɪst 45  
 piano pi'ænəʊ 45  
 pick pɪk 28  
 pick sb up [collect sb] pɪk 'sʌmbɒdi ʌp 79  
 pick sth up [learn] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 34  
 pick sth up [lift sth from the floor] pɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 79



- pie paɪ 26  
 piece pi:s 63, 86  
 pill pil 21  
 pillow 'pɪləʊ 18  
 pilot 'paɪlət 36  
 pineapple 'paɪnæpəl 25  
 pink piŋk 62  
 pipe paɪp 36  
 pitch piʃ 42  
 place [town/building] pleɪs 49  
 plan plæn 36  
 plane pleɪn 100  
 planet 'plænit 6  
 plant n plɑ:nt 28  
 plant v plɑ:nt 57  
 plastic 'plæstɪk 62  
 platform 'plætfɔ:m 29  
 play (a game) pleɪ 42  
 play against sb pleɪ ə'genst  
 'sʌmbədi 43  
 pleasant 'plezənt 11  
 Please accept our apologies  
 for ... pli:z ək'sept 'əʊə  
 ə'pɒlədʒɪz fɔ: 98  
 Please could you ...?  
 pli:z kəd ju: 98  
 plenty 'plenti 49, 63  
 plug plʌg 32  
 plug sth in plʌg 'sʌmθɪŋ ɪn 32  
 plumber 'plʌmə 36  
 plus plʌs 60  
 PM ,pi:'em 100  
 pocket 'pɒkɪt 22  
 pocket money 'pɒkɪt 'mʌni 86  
 podcast 'pɒdkɑ:st 51  
 poet 'pəʊt 44  
 poetry 'pəʊtri 44  
 point [decimal point] pɔɪnt 60  
 point [idea] pɔɪnt 66  
 point of view pɔɪnt əv vju: 97  
 pointed 'pɔɪntɪd 62  
 Poland 'pɒlənd 5  
 police force pə'li:s fɔ:s 36  
 police officer pə'li:s 'ɒfɪsə 36  
 policy 'pɒləsi 56  
 Polish 'pɒlɪʃ 5  
 polite pə'laɪt 65  
 politely pə'laɪtli 91  
 political pə'ltɪkəl 56  
 political party pə'ltɪkəl 'pɑ:ti  
 56  
 pollution pə'lu:ʃən 27  
 pop music pɒp 'mju:zɪk 45  
 popular 'pɒpjələ 46, 70  
 popularity ,pɒpjə'lærəti 70  
 population ,pɒpjə'leɪʃən 5  
 pork pɔ:k 25  
 Portuguese ,pɔ:tfə'gi:z 5  
 positive 'pɒzətɪv 11  
 post n [different meanings]  
 pəʊst 3  
 post [message] pəʊst 54  
 postgraduate ,pəʊst'grædʒuət  
 35  
 postpone pəʊst'pəʊn 80  
 pour (with rain) pɔ: 7  
 powerful 'paʊəfəl 56  
 prawns prɔ:nz 25  
 predict (the future) pri'dɪkt 74  
 prefer pri'fɜ: 67  
 prefix 'pri:fɪks 4  
 pregnancy 'pregnənsi 15  
 pregnant 'pregnənt 15  
 preparation ,prepə'reɪʃən 34  
 preposition ,prepə'zɪʃən 4  
 pretty [attractive] 'prɪti 10  
 pretty [rather] 'prɪti 91  
 pride praɪd 12  
 primary school 'praɪməri sku:l  
 33  
 prime minister praɪm 'mɪnɪstə  
 56  
 print prɪnt 53  
 print sth out prɪnt 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt  
 53  
 printer 'prɪntə 53  
 prison 'prɪzən 55  
 private 'praɪvət 33  
 proceed prə'si:d 95  
 produce v prə'dju:s 37, 39  
 product 'prɒdʌkt 37  
 production prə'dʌkʃən 39  
 profession prə'feʃən 36  
 profit 'prɒfɪt 41  
 progress n 'prɒʊgres 86  
 promise n, v 'prɒmɪs 72  
 promise (+ obj) that  
 'prɒmɪs ðæt 88  
 promise to do sth 'prɒmɪs tu: du:  
 'sʌmθɪŋ 87  
 promote prə'məʊt 38  
 promotion prə'məʊʃən 38  
 pronoun 'prəʊnaʊn 4  
 pronounce prə'naʊns 32  
 pronunciation prə,nʌnsi'eɪʃən  
 32  
 properly 'prɒpəli 19  
 protect prə'tekt 8, 58  
 protection prə'tekʃən 50  
 proud praʊd 12  
 provide prə'vaɪd 56  
 psychologist saɪ'kɒlədʒɪst 35  
 psychology saɪ'kɒlədʒi 35  
 public transport  
 'pʌblɪk 'trænspɔ:t 28, 29, 73  
 publish 'pʌblɪʃ 51  
 punctuation ,pʌŋktʃu'eɪʃən 4  
 punish 'pʌnɪʃ 33, 55  
 punishment 'pʌnɪʃmənt 55  
 pupil 'pju:pəl 33  
 purchase 'pɜ:tʃəs 95  
 purple 'pɜ:pəl 62  
 purpose 'pɜ:pəs 94  
 push pʊʃ 82  
 put on make-up put ɒn 'meɪkʌp  
 16  
 put on the brakes  
 put ɒn ðə breɪks 72  
 put on weight put ɒn weɪt 74  
 put sb through put 'sʌmbədi  
 θru: 52  
 put sth back put 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk  
 79  
 put sth off put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 80  
 put sth on [make equipment  
 work] put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79  
 put sth up [raise] put 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 ʌp 79  
 put sth on [put clothes on your  
 body] put 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn  
 22, 79, 80  
 qualification ,kwɒlɪfɪ'keɪʃən  
 35, 96  
 qualified 'kwɒlɪfaɪd 35  
 qualify 'kwɒlɪfaɪ 35  
 quality 'kwɒləti 40  
 quantity 'kwɒntəti 63  
 quarter [one quarter] 'kwɔ:tə 60  
 quarter [three months] 'kwɔ:tə  
 41  
 question mark 'kwɛstʃən mɑ:k  
 4  
 queue n kju: 24, 29, 72  
 queue v kju: 31, 72  
 quiet 'kwaɪət 27  
 quietly 'kwaɪətli 91  
 quit kwɪt 38  
 quite kwart 91  
 quite a bit kwart ə bɪt 95  
 quite a long way kwart ə lɒŋ weɪ  
 61  
 quite likely kwart 'laɪkli 74  
 quite often kwart 'ɒfən 91  
 rabbit 'ræbɪt 8  
 race n reɪs 43  
 race v reɪs 42  
 racing driver 'reɪsɪŋ 'draɪvə 42  
 rain n, v reɪn 7  
 rainforest 'reɪn,fɒrɪst 6  
 raise reɪz 41  
 range reɪndʒ 24  
 rare [meat] reə 48  
 rare [unusual] reə 8  
 rarely 'reəli 91  
 rather 'rɑ:ðə 91  
 raw rɔ: 2, 26  
 real riəl 62  
 realise 'riələɪz 88  
 reality TV show  
 'ri:ələti ,ti:'vi:ʃəʊ 51  
 really [very] 'ri:əli 89  
 really? [to express surprise]  
 'ri:əli 67  
 reason 'ri:zən 94  
 reasonable 'ri:zənəbəl 23, 71  
 recently 'ri:səntli 59  
 reception [in a hotel] rɪ'sepʃən  
 48  
 reception [wedding party]  
 rɪ'sepʃən 15  
 recession rɪ'seʃən 41  
 recipe 'resɪpi 26  
 recommend (+ -ing) ,rekə'mend  
 87  
 recommend + that  
 ,rekə'mend ðæt 50, 88  
 record n 'rekɔ:d 43  
 record v rɪ'kɔ:d 45  
 recording studio  
 rɪ'kɔ:dɪŋ 'stju:diəʊ 45  
 red pepper red 'pepə 25  
 reduce ri'dju:s 56, 57  
 reduction ri'dʌkʃən 56  
 reference 'refərəns 96  
 refund n 'ri:fʌnd 24

- regarding rɪ'gɑ:dɪŋ 95, 98  
region 'ri:dʒən 6  
regional 'ri:dʒənəl 51  
registration form  
'redʒɪ'streɪʃən fɔ:m 96  
regret n, v rɪ'gret 72, 98  
regular (verb) 'regjələ 4  
regularly 'regjələli 54  
reject v rɪ'dʒekt 80  
relating to rɪ'leɪtɪŋ tu: 3  
relations rɪ'leɪʃənz 13  
relationship rɪ'leɪʃənʃɪp 15  
relatives 'relətɪvz 13  
relax rɪ'læks 70  
relaxation ,rɪ:læks'eɪʃən 70  
relaxed rɪ'lækst 33  
relevant 'reləvənt 96  
reliable rɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 29, 71  
rely on rɪ'laɪ ɒn 77  
remarry ,rɪ:'mæri 13  
remind rɪ'maɪnd 88  
remove rɪ'mu:v 19  
rent n, v rent 17, 20  
repair rɪ'peə 36  
repeat rɪ'pi:t 32  
repetition ,repi'tɪʃən 32  
replace rɪ'pleɪs 24  
reply n, v rɪ'plai 54, 65, 72  
report rɪ'pɔ:t 51  
reporter rɪ'pɔ:tə 51  
represent ,reprɪ'zent 36  
request n rɪ'kwest 65  
require rɪ'kwaɪə 95, 96  
rescue n, v 'reskjʊ: 72  
research n rɪ'sɜ:tʃ 35  
reserve rɪ'zɜ:v 48  
resign rɪ'zaɪn 38  
resignation ,rezɪg'neɪʃən 38  
responsible for rɪ'spɒnsəbəl fɔ:  
37  
result [consequence] rɪ'zʌlt  
57, 97  
result [in a competition] rɪ'zʌlt  
43  
retake sth ,rɪ:'teɪk 'sʌmθɪŋ 34  
retire rɪ'taɪə 38  
retired rɪ'taɪəd 14  
retirement rɪ'taɪəmənt 14, 38  
review rɪ'vju: 44, 51  
reviewer rɪ'vju:ə 44  
revise rɪ'vaɪz 1, 34  
revision rɪ'vɪʒən 34  
rewrite 'ri:raɪt 69  
ride [a bike] raɪd 29  
right [exactly] raɪt 90  
right away raɪt ə'weɪ 75  
ring v rɪŋ 52, 72  
ring [jewellery] n rɪŋ 22  
ring a bell rɪŋ ə bel 75  
rink rɪŋk 42  
rise n, v raɪz 41  
road sign rəʊd saɪn 30  
roast rəʊst 26  
rob rɒb 55  
robber 'rɒbə 55  
robbery 'rɒbəri 55  
rock rɒk 50  
rock climbing rɒk 'klaɪmɪŋ 42  
romantic comedy  
rəʊ'mæntɪk 'kɒmədi 44  
room [space] ru:m 86  
room service ru:m 'sɜ:vɪs 48  
roots ru:ts 28  
rough (sea) rʌf 50  
roughly 'rʌfli 10, 14  
round [movement] raʊnd 90  
round [shape] raʊnd 62  
round the corner  
raʊnd ðə 'kɔ:nə 29, 61  
routine ru:'ti:n 1  
rub sth out rʌb 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt  
1, 32  
rubber 'rʌbə 1, 32, 62  
rubbish 'rʌbɪʃ 86  
rucksack 'rʌksæk 22  
rug rʌg 18  
ruler 'ru:lə 32  
run [manage] rʌn 37, 40  
run [use applications] rʌn 53  
run out of sth rʌn aʊt ɒv  
'sʌmθɪŋ 19, 39  
runway 'rʌnweɪ 47  
rush hour rʌʃ 'aʊə 27  
Russia 'rʌʃə 5  
Russian 'rʌʃən 5  
sack n, vsæk 38  
safe seɪf 27  
sail seɪl 42  
sailing 'seɪlɪŋ 42  
sailor 'seɪlə 36, 42  
salad 'sæləd 25  
salad dressing 'sæləd 'dresɪŋ 25  
salary 'sæləri 37  
sales rep seɪlz rep 100  
salmon 'sæmən 25  
same to you seɪm tu: ju: 68  
sand sænd 50  
sandy 'sændi 50  
satisfied with 'sætɪsfaɪd wɪð 77  
saucapan 'səʊspən 26  
Saudi Arabia 'səʊdi ə'reɪbiə 5  
Saudi Arabian 'səʊdi ə'reɪbiən  
5  
save [keep] seɪv 53, 57  
save [rescue] seɪv 72  
save (up) seɪv 20, 79  
saxophone 'sæksəfəʊn 45  
saxophonist sæk'sɒfənɪst 45  
say [give information in writing]  
seɪ 51, 66  
say + that seɪ ðæt 88  
Scandinavia ,skændɪ'neɪvɪə 5  
scared skeəd 12  
scarf skɑ:f 22  
scenery 'si:nəri 28, 86  
science 'saɪəns 35  
science fiction 'saɪəns 'fɪkʃən 44  
scientist 'saɪəntɪst 70  
score a goal skɔ:r ə'gəʊl 74  
search n, v sɜ:tʃ 54, 58  
seaside resort 'si:saɪd rɪ'zɔ:t 50  
season (in the year) 'si:zən 28  
season ticket 'si:zən 'tɪkɪt 29  
seat belt seɪt belt 47  
second (time) 'sekənd 59  
secondary school  
'sekəndəri sku:l 33  
secondly 'sekəndli 92  
secret 'si:kret 56  
see [find out] si: 3  
see [use your eyes] si: 85  
see the sights si: ðə saɪts 49  
seem si:m 85  
seldom 'seldəm 91  
semi-circle 'semi 'sɜ:kəl 62  
send my regards/love to  
send maɪ rɪ'gɑ:dz lʌv tu: 99  
sense of humour  
sens ɒv 'hju:mə 11  
sensible 'sensɪbəl 11  
series 'sɪəri:z 51  
serious [bad] 'sɪəriəs 21, 74  
serious [important] 'sɪəriəs 15  
serious [quiet] 'sɪəriəs 11  
serve v sɜ:v 23  
service 'sɜ:vɪs 48  
set off set ɒf 80  
set sth up set 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp 37, 40  
several 'sevərəl 63  
shade ʃeɪd 50  
shake hands ʃeɪk hændz 9, 68  
shake your head ʃeɪk jɔ: hed 9  
shall we ...? ʃæl wi: 65  
share ʃeə 18, 32  
shark ʃɑ:k 8  
sharp(ly) ʃɑ:p 41  
sharpen 'ʃɑ:pən 32  
shave ʃeɪv 16  
sheet [of a bed] ʃi:t 18  
sheet [of paper] ʃi:t 63  
shelf ʃelf 24  
shine ʃaɪn 7  
shocked ʃɒkt 89  
shocking 'ʃɒkɪŋ 89  
shoot ʃu:t 58  
shop v ʃɒp 23  
shop assistant ʃɒp ə'sɪstənt 23  
shopping centre 'ʃɒpɪŋ 'sentə  
24  
shore ʃɔ: 50  
short of sth ʃɔ:t ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ 77  
shoulder 'ʃəʊldə 9  
shout at/to sb ʃaʊt æt (tu:  
'sʌmbədi 77  
show sb around ʃəʊ 'sʌmbədi  
ə'raʊnd 39  
shower [bath] 'ʃaʊə 16  
shower [of rain] 'ʃaʊə 7  
shy ʃaɪ 11  
sight saɪt 85  
sights saɪts 49  
sightseeing 'saɪtsi:ŋ 49  
sign n saɪn 30  
sign v saɪn 98  
sign (of sth happening) saɪn 41  
signature 'sɪgnətʃə 96, 98  
signed saɪnd 96  
significance sɪg'nɪfɪkəns 71  
silence 'saɪləns 31  
silently 'saɪləntli 1  
silk sɪlk 62  
silly 'sɪli 11  
similar 'sɪmɪlə 70, 77  
similarity ,sɪmɪ'lærɪti 70  
simple 'sɪmpəl 34



- since [conjunction] sɪns 94, 99  
 since [preposition] sɪns 59  
 singer 'sɪŋə 70  
 single [record] 'sɪŋɡəl 45  
 single room 'sɪŋɡəl ru:m 48  
 sink sɪŋk 18  
 sister-in-law 'sɪstətɪnlɔ: 13  
 situation ,sɪtʃu'eɪʃən 68  
 size saɪz 23, 61  
 ski v ski: 42  
 skills skɪlz 96  
 skin skɪn 9  
 skirt skɜ:t 22  
 skis ski:z 42  
 sky skaɪ 7  
 sleep n sli:p 16  
 sleeping bag 'sli:pɪŋ bæŋ 86  
 sleeve sli:v 22  
 slice slaɪs 63  
 slight slaɪt 41  
 slightly 'slaɪtli 41, 91  
 slip sli:p 19  
 smart [well-dressed] smɑ:t 10, 22, 33  
 smell n, v smel 85  
 smooth smu:ð 1  
 snack snæk 16  
 snake sneɪk 8  
 snow v snəʊ 7  
 so səʊ 94  
 so do/am I səʊ du: /æm aɪ 67  
 so that səʊ ðæt 94  
 soap opera səʊp 'ɒpərə 51  
 sociable 'səʊʃəbəl 71  
 social networking site 'səʊʃəl 'netwɜ:kɪŋ saɪt 54  
 socket 'sɒkɪt 32  
 sofa 'səʊfə 18  
 software 'sɒftweə 53  
 sold out səʊld aʊt 31  
 soldier 'səʊldʒə 36, 58  
 solo artist 'səʊləʊ 'ɑ:tɪst 45  
 solution sə'lu:ʃən 57  
 some people believe ... sʌm 'pi:pəl bɪ'li:v 97  
 something wrong with 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð 77  
 songwriter 'sɒŋ,raɪtə 45  
 sooner or later 'su:nər ɔ: 'leɪtə 75  
 sore throat sɔ: θrəʊt 21  
 sorry to disturb you 'sɒri tu: dɪ'stɜ:b ju: 64  
 sorry to keep you waiting 'sɒri tu: ki:p ju: 'weɪtɪŋ 64  
 sort of sɔ:t ɒv 76  
 sort sth out sɔ:t 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt 79  
 sound saʊnd 85  
 sour 'saʊə 26  
 south saʊθ 6  
 South Korea saʊθ kə'ri:ə 5  
 south-east saʊθ 'i:st 6  
 south-west saʊθ 'west 6  
 souvenir 'su:vən'iə 49  
 space speɪs 17  
 spacebar 'speɪsbɑ: 53  
 Spain speɪn 5  
 spam spæm 54  
 Spanish 'spænɪʃ 5  
 spare room speə ru:m 18  
 spare time speə taɪm 16  
 sparkling 'spɑ:kəlɪŋ 48  
 Speaking [on the phone] 'spi:kɪŋ 52  
 special offer 'speʃəl 'ɒfə 24  
 spectacular spek'tækjələ 46  
 speech spi:tʃ 82  
 speed limit spi:d 'lɪmɪt 30  
 spell spel 32  
 spelling 'spelɪŋ 32  
 spend (money) on spend ɒn 77  
 spend time spend taɪm 50, 74  
 spicy 'spɑ:si 26  
 spider 'spaɪdə 8  
 spill spɪl 19  
 spinach 'spɪnɪʃ 25  
 spoonful 'spu:nfʊl 63  
 square adj, n skweə 62  
 St seɪnt/stri:t 100  
 stadium 'steɪdɪəm 42  
 stall stɔ:l 24  
 star [famous actor] stɑ: 44  
 starter 'stɑ:tə 48  
 state education steɪt ,edʒu'keɪʃən 33  
 station [broadcasting] 'steɪʃən 51  
 statue 'stætʃu: 49  
 stay n steɪ 48  
 stay at school steɪ æt sku:l 33  
 stay behind steɪ bɪ'haɪnd 33  
 stay in steɪ ɪn 16  
 stay out late steɪ aʊt leɪt 14  
 stay the same steɪ ðə seɪm 41  
 steal sti:l 55  
 stepfather 'step,fɑ:ðə 13  
 steps steɪps 17  
 sterling 'stɜ:ɪŋ 20  
 stick stɪk 42  
 still [continuing] stɪl 93  
 still [of water] stɪl 48  
 stir stɜ: 26  
 stomach ache 'stʌmək eɪk 21  
 store stɔ: 53  
 storm stɔ:m 7  
 straight streɪt 10  
 straight away streɪt ə'weɪ 75  
 stranger 'streɪndʒə 68  
 strawberry 'strɔ:bəri 25  
 street market stri:t 'mɑ:kɪt 24  
 stress [emphasis] stres 4  
 stress [worry] stres 12  
 stressed strest 27  
 stressful 'stresfʊl 27  
 strict strikt 14, 33  
 stripe straɪp 62  
 stroll strɔ:l 50  
 strong (wind) strɒŋ 7  
 study n 'stʌdi 18  
 stuff stʌf 95  
 stupid 'stju:pɪd 11, 70  
 stupidity stju:'pɪdəti 70  
 stylish 'stɑɪlɪʃ 22, 62  
 subject 'sʌbdʒɪkt 33  
 subtraction səb'trækʃən 60  
 succeed (in doing sth) sək'si:d 35, 38  
 success sək'ses 38  
 successful sək'sesfəl 35, 38  
 suddenly 'sʌdnli 91  
 suffer 'sʌfə 57  
 suffer from sth 'sʌfə frɒm 'sʌmθɪŋ 21  
 suffix 'sʌfɪks 4  
 suggest (+ -ing) sə'dʒest x 87  
 suggest + that sə'dʒest ðæt 88  
 suggestion sə'dʒestʃən 65  
 suit n su:t 22  
 suit v su:t 22, 23  
 suitable 'su:təbəl 71  
 suitcase 'su:tkeɪs 47  
 sun sʌn 7  
 sunbathe 'sʌnbeɪð 50  
 sunbathing 'sʌnbeɪðɪŋ 50  
 sunburn 'sʌnbɜ:n 50  
 sun cream sʌn kri:m 50  
 sunglasses 'sʌn,glɑ:sɪz 73  
 sunny 'sʌni 7  
 sunscreen/sunblock 'sʌnskri:n/'sʌnblok 50  
 sunset 'sʌnset 28  
 suntan 'sʌntæn 50  
 superb su:'pɜ:b 43  
 support [help] sə'pɔ:t 56, 98  
 sure ʃɜ: 65  
 surf the web sɜ:f ðə web 54  
 surface 'sɜ:fɪs 6  
 surfing 'sɜ:fɪŋ 50  
 surgeon 'sɜ:dʒən 21, 36  
 surgery [an operation] 'sɜ:dʒəri 21  
 surgery [a place] 'sɜ:dʒəri 36  
 surrounded by sə'raʊndɪd baɪ 28  
 swap (places) swɒp 32  
 sweater 'swetə 22  
 sweets swi:ts 24  
 swerve swɜ:v 30  
 swimmer 'swɪmə 42  
 swimming costume 'swɪmɪŋ 'kɒstju:m 42  
 Swiss swɪs 5  
 switch sth off swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf 57  
 switch sth on swɪtʃ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn 79  
 Switzerland 'swɪtsələnd 5  
 syllable 'sɪləbəl 4  
 synonym 'sɪnənɪm 1  
 system 'sɪstəm 33  
 tablet 'tæblət 21  
 take [accept sth] teɪk 81  
 take [remove sth] teɪk 81  
 take [steal] teɪk 55, 81  
 take [write down] teɪk 81  
 take (size 12) teɪk 81  
 take (time) teɪk 59  
 take a break teɪk ə breɪk 81  
 take a course teɪk ə kɔ:s 81  
 take/make a decision teɪk/meɪk ə dɪ'sɪʒən 81  
 take a look teɪk ə lʊk 81



take a photo	teik ə 'fəʊtəʊ	81	that's a shame	ðæts ə ʃeɪm	23	totally	'təʊtəli	66, 91
take/have a shower	teik/hæv ə 'ʃaʊə	81	that's all right/okay	ðæts ɔ:l raɪt ə'keɪ	64	touch n, v	tʌtʃ	85
take action	teik 'æksjən	57	that's to say	ðæts tu: seɪ	100	tournament	'tʊənəmənt	43
take/do an exam	teik/du: æn ɪg'zæm	34	that's very kind of you	ðæts 'veri kaɪnd ɒv ju:	64	towards	tə'wɔ:dz	90
take care	teik keə	68	the best/worst thing about ...	ðə best/wɜ:st θɪŋ ə'baʊt	28	toy	tɔɪ	62
take/do exercise	teik/du: 'eksəsaɪz	81	the cold	ðə kəʊld	7	track [music]	træk	45
take over sth	teik 'əʊvə 'sʌmθɪŋ	40	the last time	ðə lɑ:st taɪm	59	track [sport]	træk	42
take part	teik pɑ:t	43	the news	ðə nju:z	51	tractor	'træktə	28
take place	teik pleɪs	46	the other day	ði 'ʌðə deɪ	59	trade	treɪd	41
take sb on	teik 'sʌmbɒdi ɒn	79	the thing is ...	ðə θɪŋ ɪz	95	tradition	trə'dɪʃən	46
take sth back	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ bæk	79	theft	θeft	55	traditional	trə'dɪʃənəl	46, 71
take sth off	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf	22, 80	there's something wrong with ...	ðeəz 'sʌmθɪŋ rɒŋ wɪð	19	traffic jam	'træfɪk dʒæm	27
take sth up	teik 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp	40	therefore	'ðeəfɔ: 94	trainers	'treɪnəz	22	
take things/it easy	teik θɪŋz ɪt 'i:zi	81	these days	ði:z deɪz	59	training	'treɪnɪŋ	38
takeaway	'teɪkəweɪ	16	thick [not thin]	θɪk	61	translate (sth into sth)	trænz'leɪt	2, 70, 77
take-off	'teɪkɒf	47	thick fog	θɪk fɒg	7	translation	trænz'leɪʃən	2, 70
talent	'tælənt	11	thief	θi:f	55	translator	trænz'leɪtə	70
talented	'tæləntɪd	11	thin	θɪn	61	travel agent	'trævəl 'eɪdʒənt	73
tall person/tree/building	tɔ:l 'pɜ:sən/tri:/'bɪldɪŋ	61	think of (+ -ing)	θɪŋk ɒv	77, 87	treat	tri:t	36
tap	tæp	18, 57	though	ðəʊ	93	tree	tri:	28
taste [flavour]	n, v teɪst	26, 85	thousand	'θaʊzənd	60	trend	trend	41
taste [what you like]	teɪst	45	three quarters	θri:'kwɔ:təz	60	trolley	'trɒli	24, 47
tasty	'teɪsti	26	thriller	'θrɪlə	44	truck	trʌk	29
tax	tæks	56	through	θru:	90	trumpet	'trʌmpɪt	45
taxi rank	'tæksi ræŋk	29	throw sth away	θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ ə'weɪ	24, 57	trumpeter	'trʌmpɪtə	45
teaching	'ti:tʃɪŋ	35	throw sth to/at sb	θrəʊ 'sʌmθɪŋ tu:/æt 'sʌmbɒdi	77	trunk	trʌŋk	8
team	ti:m	43, 96	thumb	θʌm	9	trust	trʌst	11
tear	v teə	19	thunder	'θʌndə	7	try sth on	traɪ 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn	23
teenager	'ti:n,eɪdʒə	14	thunderstorm	'θʌndəstɔ:m	7	try/do your best	traɪ/du: dʒɔ: best	34
teens	ti:nz	14	tick	tɪk	3	T-shirt	'ti:ʃɜ:t	22, 73
tell + obj + that	tel ðæt	88	tie	taɪ	22	tube	tju:b	63
tell sb a joke	tel 'sʌmbɒdi ə dʒəʊk	74	tiger	'taɪgə	8	tune	tju:n	45
telly	'teli	100	tights	taɪts	22	Turkey	'tɜ:ki	5
temperature	'tempərətʃə	6, 21	tights	taɪts	22	Turkish	'tɜ:kiʃ	5
temple	'tempəl	49	tiles	taɪlz	18	turn sth down [reduce volume]	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ daʊn	32
tent	tent	42, 86	time (for us) to go/leave (etc.)	taɪm tu: gəʊ/li:v	59	turn sth/sb down [reject]	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ 'sʌmbɒdi daʊn	80
term	tɜ:m	33	times	taɪmz	60	turn sth off	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒf	80
terminal (building)	'tɜ:mɪnəl	47	timetable	'taɪm,teɪbəl	33	turn sth on	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ɒn	80
terribly sorry	'terəbli 'sɔ:ri	64, 74	tin (of fruit, etc.)	tɪn	63	turn sth up	tɜ:n 'sʌmθɪŋ ʌp	32
terrific	tə'rifɪk	89, 95	tiny	'taɪni	61, 89	turning	'tɜ:nɪŋ	30
terrifying	tə'reɪfɪŋ	89	tip [advice]	tɪp	2, 96	twice	twɑɪs	68
text	v tekst	52	tip [money]	tɪp	2	twin(s)	twɪn	13
texting	'tekstɪŋ	52	tired	'taɪəd	89	twin room	twɪn ru:m	48
Thai	taɪ	5	tired of sth	taɪəd ɒv 'sʌmθɪŋ	77	type	v taɪp	39, 96
Thailand	'taɪlənd	5	tiring	'taɪrɪŋ	89	ugly	'ʌgli	10
thank goodness/God	θæŋk 'gʊdnəs/gʊd	68	tissue	'tɪʃu:	62	UK	'ju:'keɪ	5
thank sb (for sth)	θæŋk 'sʌmbɒdi	98	to be honest	tu: bi: 'ɒnɪst	75	UN	'ju:'en	100
thanks (very much)	θæŋks	64	to begin with	tu: bɪ'gɪn wɪð	92	unable	ʌn'eɪbəl	69
that/it depends	ðæt/ɪt dɪ'pendz	76	to some extent	tu: sʌm ɪk'stent	66	unbelievable	ʌnbɪ'li:vəbəl	71
that sort/kind of thing	ðæt sɔ:t/kaɪnd ɒv θɪŋ	76	toast	təʊst	86	uncle	'ʌŋkəl	13
that's a great idea	ðæts ə greɪt aɪ'dɪə	65	toddler	'tɒdlə	14	uncomfortable	ʌn'kʌmfətəbəl	69, 71
that's a pity	ðæts ə 'pɪti	23	toe	təʊ	9	uncountable (noun)	ʌn'kaʊntəbəl	4
			tomato	tə'mə:təʊ	25	under [movement]	'ʌndə	90
			too	tu:	93	under arrest	'ʌndə ə'rest	55
			toothbrush	'tu:θbrʌʃ	73	under one roof	'ʌndə wʌn ru:f	24
			toothpaste	'tu:θpeɪst	73	undergraduate	'ʌndə'grædʒuət	35
			top floor	tɒp flɔ:	17	underneath	'ʌndə'ni:θ	90
			topic	'tɒpɪk	2	undo	ʌn'du:	22

unemployed ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪd 38  
 unemployment ˌʌnɪm'plɔɪmənt 38  
 unfair ʌn'feə 69  
 unfashionable ʌn'fæʃənəbəl 71  
 unforgettable ˌʌnfə'getəbəl 71  
 unfriendly ʌn'frendli 11  
 uniform 'ju:nɒfɔ:m 33  
 United States of America  
 ju:'naɪtɪd steɪts ɒv ə'merɪkə 5  
 unkind ʌn'kaɪnd 11  
 unless ʌn'les 94  
 unlikely ʌn'laɪkli 69  
 unlock ʌn'lɒk 69  
 unlucky ʌn'lʌki 69  
 unnecessary ʌn'nesəsəri 2  
 unpack ʌn'pæk 69  
 unpleasant ʌn'plezənt 11  
 unreasonable ʌn'ri:zənəbəl 71  
 unreliable ˌʌnrɪ'laɪəbəl 11, 71  
 unsociable ʌn'səʊʃəbəl 71  
 unsuccessful ˌʌnsək'sesfəl 35  
 unsuitable ʌn'su:təbəl 71  
 untidy ʌn'taɪdi 2  
 until ʌn'tɪl 59  
 up [further along] ʌp 61  
 up [not in bed] ʌp 28  
 up and down ʌp ænd daʊn 75  
 up to ʌp tu: 46  
 upload ʌp'ləʊd 54  
 upset adj ʌp'set 12  
 upstairs ʌp'steəz 17  
 up-to-date ˌʌptə'deɪt 78  
 urgently 'ɜ:dʒəntli 91  
 use n ju:s 32  
 use v ju:z 32  
 used to ju:st tu: 67  
 useful 'ju:sfəl 71  
 useless 'ju:sləs 71  
 username 'ju:zəneɪm 53  
 utility room ju:'tɪləti ru:m 18  
 valley 'væli 28  
 value 'vælju: 41  
 value for money 'vælju: fɔ: 'mʌni 20, 27  
 van væn 29  
 variety və'reɪəti 27, 40  
 vase vɑ:z 63  
 vast majority vɑ:st mə'dʒɔrəti 60  
 veal vi:l 25  
 vegetarian ˌvedʒɪ'teəriən 25  
 vehicle 'vi:əkəl 29  
 verb vɜ:b 4  
 vet vet 36, 100  
 via 'vi:ə 30  
 victory 'vɪktəri 43  
 video clip 'vɪdɪəʊ klɪp 54  
 view vju: 17  
 village 'vɪlɪdʒ 28  
 vinegar 'vɪnɪgə 25  
 violence 'vaɪələns 58  
 violent 'vaɪələnt 58  
 violin 'vaɪə'li:n 45  
 violinist ˌvaɪə'lɪnɪst 45  
 virus [computer] 'vaɪrəs 53

visa application form  
 'vi:zə ˌæplɪ'keɪʃən fɔ:m 96  
 vitally important 'vaɪtəli  
 ɪm'pɔ:tənt 74  
 vocational training vəʊ'keɪʃənəl  
 'treɪnɪŋ 33  
 volleyball 'vɒləbɔ:l 50  
 vote vət 56  
 vowel 'vaʊəl 34  
 wage weɪdʒ 37  
 waist weɪst 9  
 wait and see weɪt ænd si: 76  
 wake (up) weɪk 79  
 wake (sb) up weɪk ʌp 16  
 war wɔ: 58  
 wardrobe 'wɔ:drəʊb 23  
 warn (+ obj + inf) wɔ:n 88  
 warning 'wɔ:nɪŋ 31  
 wash n, v wɒʃ 16, 72  
 washbasin 'wɒʃ,beɪsɪn 18  
 washing [dirty clothes] 'wɒʃɪŋ  
 16  
 waste weɪst 20, 57  
 watch wɒtʃ 85  
 waterfall 'wɔ:təfɔ:l 6  
 wave to somebody  
 weɪv tu: 'sʌmbədi 9  
 waves (in the sea) weɪvz 50  
 wavy 'weɪvi 10  
 way [route] weɪ 30  
 we could ... wi: kəd 65  
 weak wi:k 70  
 weakness 'wi:knəs 70  
 wear weə 33  
 weather forecast  
 'weðə 'fɔ:kɑ:st 51  
 webcam 'webkæm 53  
 website 'websaɪt 54  
 wedding 'wedɪŋ 15  
 weekly 'wi:kli 1, 51  
 weigh wei 10, 47  
 weight weɪt 10  
 well aware wel ə'weə 74  
 well done [meat] wel dʌn 48  
 well known wel nəʊn 51  
 west west 6  
 wet wet 7  
 whale weɪl 8  
 What are you up to? wɒt ɑ: ju:  
 ʌp tu: 95  
 What do you do?  
 wɒt du: ju: du: 37  
 What do you do for a living?  
 wɒt du: ju: du: fɔ:r ə 'lɪvɪŋ 37  
 What do you think of/about ...?  
 wɒt du: ju: θɪŋk ɒv/ə'baʊt 66  
 What does he/she look like?  
 wɒt dɔz hi:/ʃi: lʊk laɪk 10  
 What does that involve? wɒt dɔz  
 ðæt ɪn'vɒlv 37  
 What does X mean?  
 wɒt dɔz eks mi:n 32  
 What does X stand for? wɒt dɔz  
 eks stænd fɔ: 100  
 What for? wɒt fɔ: 76  
 what if wɒt ɪf 76  
 What's he/she/it like? wɒts hi:/ʃi:/  
 ɪt laɪk 11

what's more wɒts mɔ: 93  
 What's on? wɒts ɒn 44  
 What's your job? wɒts jɔ: dʒɒb  
 37  
 wheelchair 'wi:l'tʃeə 73  
 whereas weə'ræz 93  
 whether 'weðə 94  
 while [comparing] 'waɪl 93  
 while [during] 'waɪl 92  
 Who's calling? hu:z 'kɔ:lɪŋ 52  
 Why don't we ...? waɪ dəʊnt wi:  
 65  
 Why not? waɪ nɒt 76  
 wide [not narrow] waɪd 61  
 wide awake waɪd ə'weɪk 74  
 wide choice waɪd tʃɔ:s 74  
 wide vocabulary  
 waɪd vɔ:kəbjələri 34, 74  
 widow 'wɪdəʊ 13  
 width wɪθ 61  
 wild (animals) waɪld 8  
 willing 'wɪlɪŋ 34  
 win wɪn 43  
 wind n wɪnd 7  
 windsurfing 'wɪndzɜ:fɪŋ 50  
 windy 'wɪndi 7  
 wing wɪŋ 8  
 winner 'wɪnə 43  
 wish wɪʃ 11  
 won't be long wəʊnt bi: lɒŋ 64  
 wonderful 'wʌndəfəl 89  
 wood wʊd 36  
 wooden 'wʊdən 18, 62  
 woods wʊdz 28  
 work [function] wɜ:k 19, 39  
 work experience  
 wɜ:k ɪk'spɪəriəns 96  
 work on sth wɜ:k ɒn 'sʌmθɪŋ  
 34  
 work out wɜ:k aʊt 42  
 work sth out wɜ:k 'sʌmθɪŋ aʊt  
 60  
 worry about sth 'wʌri ə'baʊt  
 'sʌmθɪŋ 77  
 worth [value] wɜ:θ 55  
 worth (+ noun/-ing) wɜ:θ 49  
 would rather wʊd 'rɑ:ðə 67  
 wow wəʊ 32  
 wrist rɪst 9  
 write down raɪt daʊn 2  
 wrong number rɒŋ 'nʌmbə 52  
 yard jɑ:d 61  
 yawn jɔ:n 9  
 yet jet 93  
 yoga 'jɔ:ɡə 42  
 you (don't) get ... ju: get 27, 28  
 you know ju: nəʊ 76  
 you must be joking ju: mʌst bi:  
 'dʒɔ:kɪŋ 76  
 Yours faithfully/sincerely  
 jɔ:z 'feɪθfəli/ɪn'sɪəli 98  
 zero 'ziərəʊ 60  
 zip zɪp 22  
 zoo zu: 8

# How to use the *English Vocabulary in Use* Pre-Intermediate and Intermediate CD-ROM to learn vocabulary

Your copy of *English Vocabulary in Use Intermediate* comes with a CD-ROM. You can use the CD-ROM to improve your English vocabulary. These two pages answer some common questions about the CD-ROM.

## What is on the CD-ROM?

The CD-ROM contains

- two practice activities for each unit of the book (200 in total)
- two vocabulary games, *Dune Buggy* and *Word Rowing*
- a test maker
- a record and play-back function
- a dictionary function
- a reference section.

## When should I use the CD-ROM?

You can use the CD-ROM before or after you do a unit in the book. This section will give you some suggestions.

## Using the CD-ROM before you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you discover how much vocabulary you already know about a topic. Try this:

- Choose a topic from the *Exercises* menu, for example *Shopping in the Daily Life* section.
- Complete the two exercises. After each exercise, click *Check your answers* to see how many questions you got right. Make a note of any words you found difficult.
- Now go to the relevant unit of the book. Study the notes on the left-hand page. Try to find the words you didn't know from the CD-ROM. Complete the exercises on the right-hand page.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM. Look at the *My progress* section. Can you improve your score this time? Complete the two exercises again for the same unit.

## Using the CD-ROM after you look at a unit in the book

The CD-ROM can help you to remember words you learnt from the book. This kind of revision is very important if you want to remember vocabulary. Try this:

- When you complete a unit from the book, write the date at the top of the page.
- One week later, go to the CD-ROM and do the two exercises from that unit. How much vocabulary can you remember? Make a note of any words you found difficult or couldn't remember.
- Go back to the unit in the book and look for the words you didn't know. Study the words again.
- Finally, return to the CD-ROM and complete the two exercises again. Did you remember those difficult words?



The CD-ROM can also help you test yourself. You can even personalise the tests to cover the topics that *you* want to practise. Try this:

- When you finish a group of units in the book (for example, the seven units in the *People* section), go to the CD-ROM and make a test on the vocabulary from those units. The CD-ROM will create five test questions from each of those units. For an extra challenge, use the time limit function. If your score is low, look at the units again. Then create a new test and try to improve your score.
- Alternatively, create a test when you have completed the whole book. Choose units at random or concentrate on units that you found difficult.

### Can the CD-ROM help me with my pronunciation?

Yes, it can. The CD-ROM has a record and play-back function which you can use to practise your pronunciation. Try this:

- When you have completed an exercise on the CD-ROM, click the green arrow to hear a model pronunciation of the words or sentences.
- Then click the red *Record your voice* button at the bottom of the screen. Practise saying the word or sentence.
- Now click the green *Play your voice* arrow at the bottom of the screen. Does your pronunciation sound correct? Listen to the model pronunciation again to check.
- Record your voice again if necessary.

### Can I use the CD-ROM for fun?

Yes, of course! We hope you will find all of the exercises fun. However, there are also two games which can help you to practise vocabulary in a fun way.

- In *Dune Buggy*, you drive a car and score points by hitting the correct words. You can choose from ten topics, including food and clothes, but you have to avoid the wrong words in each topic. If you write down your score after each game, you can try to improve it next time.
- In *Word Rowing*, you have to guess words from the clue that you are given. This game can help you to remember what words mean. Write down your score and try to improve it next time.

Both these games are quick and fun. Just playing for five or ten minutes a day can help you to remember more vocabulary. And to make things even more fun, you can have a competition with a friend. Who can score the most points?

### What's in the reference section?

Here you will find a really useful wordlist, with all the key words from the book. You can hear the American English and British English pronunciation of every word and phrase. You can also make notes on this page. All the left-hand book pages are available to help you with the exercises.

### What else can the CD-ROM do?

The CD-ROM also has a dictionary function. You can use it to look up any words that you don't know. You will need an internet connection for this. Also, you can click on any word in the CD-ROM and it will look up the word in the online dictionary.

You can also check your progress at any time using the *Progress* section. This will help you to see which exercises you have completed. It can also show you areas where you need more practice. In those cases, study the left-hand pages again.

Remember you can print out tests, exercises and the answers.

We hope you enjoy using the *English Vocabulary in Use Intermediate* CD-ROM.



# English Vocabulary in Use

Intermediate

Third edition

Do you want to improve your vocabulary quickly? *English Vocabulary in Use* has it all. For English language learners at B1 level, this third edition of the best-selling vocabulary book now offers:

- Fully updated units informed by the English Vocabulary Profile, so you learn the most important words at intermediate level
- New words presented and explained in context
- Lots of opportunities for personalised practice
- A common mistakes feature which helps you avoid frequent errors

[www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse](http://www.cambridge.org/elt/inuse)

**B1** English Profile  
[www.englishprofile.org](http://www.englishprofile.org)

A1 Starter

A2 Elementary

**B1** Pre-intermediate and intermediate

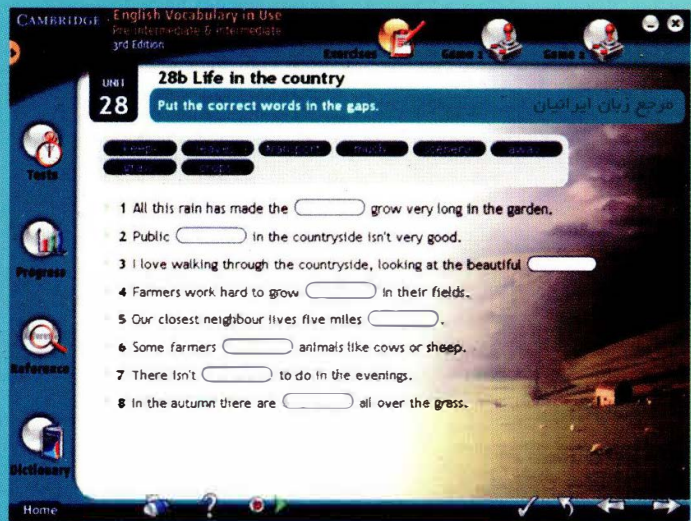
B2 Upper-intermediate

C1 Advanced

مرجع زبان ایرانینان  
[www.irLanguage.com](http://www.irLanguage.com)

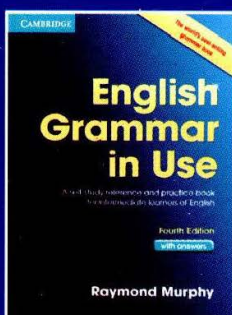
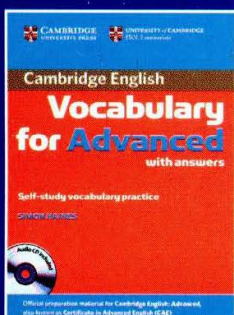
On the CD-ROM:

- Two extra exercises for each unit
- Personalised, printable tests – ideal for exam practice
- Audio recordings for every exercise
- Interactive games for fun vocabulary learning



#### System requirements

For Windows XP, Vista, Windows 7 and Mac OS X 10.4 or higher



#### CAMBRIDGE ENGLISH CORPUS

The Cambridge English Corpus is a multi-billion word collection of written and spoken English. It includes the Cambridge Learner Corpus, a unique bank of exam candidate papers.



Our authors study the Corpus to see how English is really used, and to identify typical learner mistakes. This means that Cambridge materials help students to avoid mistakes, and you can be confident the language taught is useful, natural and fully up to date.

[www.cambridge.org/corpus](http://www.cambridge.org/corpus)

**CAMBRIDGE QUALITY GUARANTEE**



**CAMBRIDGE**  
UNIVERSITY PRESS  
[www.cambridge.org](http://www.cambridge.org)